

UND MATHEMATICS

MATH208:
DISCRETE
MATHEMATICS

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS
THE UNIVERSITY OF NORTH DAKOTA

Copyright © 2017 UND Mathematics

PUBLISHED BY DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS
THE UNIVERSITY OF NORTH DAKOTA

<http://arts-sciences.und.edu/math/>

Copyright © 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009, 2014, 2015, 2016, 2017 University of North Dakota Mathematics
Department

Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this document under the terms of the GNU Free Documentation License, Version 1.2 or any later version published by the Free Software Foundation; with no Invariant Sections, no Front-Cover Texts, and no Back-Cover Texts. A copy of the license is included in the section entitled "GNU Free Documentation License".

Second corrected edition, Second printing: December 2017

Contents

1	<i>Logical Connectives and Compound Propositions</i>	25
1.1	<i>Propositions</i>	25
1.2	<i>Negation: not</i>	26
1.3	<i>Conjunction: and</i>	27
1.4	<i>Disjunction: or</i>	27
1.5	<i>Logical Implication and Biconditional</i>	28
1.5.1	<i>Implication: If ..., then ...</i>	28
1.5.2	<i>Biconditional: ... if and only if ...</i>	29
1.6	<i>Truth table construction</i>	29
1.7	<i>Translating to propositional forms</i>	30
1.8	<i>Bit strings</i>	30
1.9	<i>Exercises</i>	32
2	<i>Logical Equivalence</i>	35
2.1	<i>Logical Equivalence</i>	35
2.2	<i>Tautologies and Contradictions</i>	36
2.3	<i>Related If ..., then ... propositions</i>	36
2.4	<i>Fundamental equivalences</i>	36

2.5	<i>Disjunctive normal form</i>	37
2.6	<i>Proving equivalences</i>	38
2.7	<i>Exercises</i>	40
3	<i>Predicates and Quantifiers</i>	41
3.1	<i>Predicates</i>	41
3.2	<i>Instantiation and Quantification</i>	42
3.3	<i>Translating to symbolic form</i>	43
3.4	<i>Quantification and basic laws of logic</i>	44
3.5	<i>Negating quantified statements</i>	45
3.6	<i>Exercises</i>	46
4	<i>Rules of Inference</i>	49
4.1	<i>Valid propositional arguments</i>	50
4.2	<i>Fallacies</i>	53
4.3	<i>Arguments with quantifiers</i>	53
4.4	<i>Exercises</i>	55
5	<i>Sets: Basic Definitions</i>	57
5.1	<i>Specifying sets</i>	57
5.1.1	<i>Roster method</i>	57
5.1.2	<i>Set-builder notation</i>	58
5.2	<i>Special standard sets</i>	58
5.3	<i>Empty and universal sets</i>	58
5.4	<i>Subset and equality relations</i>	59

5.5	<i>Cardinality</i>	60
5.6	<i>Power set</i>	60
5.7	<i>Exercises</i>	61
6	<i>Set Operations</i>	63
6.1	<i>Intersection</i>	63
6.2	<i>Venn diagrams</i>	63
6.3	<i>Union</i>	63
6.4	<i>Symmetric difference</i>	64
6.5	<i>Complement</i>	64
6.6	<i>Ordered lists</i>	64
6.7	<i>Cartesian product</i>	65
6.8	<i>Laws of set theory</i>	65
6.9	<i>Proving set identities</i>	67
6.10	<i>Bit string operations</i>	67
6.11	<i>Exercises</i>	68
7	<i>Styles of Proof</i>	69
7.1	<i>Direct proof</i>	69
7.2	<i>Indirect proof</i>	72
7.3	<i>Proof by contradiction</i>	72
7.4	<i>Proof by cases</i>	74
7.5	<i>Existence proof</i>	75
7.6	<i>Using a counterexample to disprove a statement</i>	75
7.7	<i>Exercises</i>	77

8	<i>Relations</i>	79
8.1	<i>Relations</i>	79
8.2	<i>Specifying a relation</i>	80
8.2.1	<i>By ordered pairs</i>	80
8.2.2	<i>By graph</i>	80
8.2.3	<i>By digraph: domain=codomain</i>	81
8.2.4	<i>By 0-1 matrix</i>	81
8.3	<i>Set operations with relations</i>	82
8.3.1	<i>Subset relation using matrices</i>	82
8.4	<i>Special relation operations</i>	83
8.4.1	<i>Inverse of a relation</i>	83
8.4.2	<i>Composition of relations</i>	83
8.4.3	<i>Composition with matrices: Boolean product</i>	84
8.5	<i>Exercises</i>	85
9	<i>Properties of Relations</i>	87
9.1	<i>Reflexive</i>	87
9.2	<i>Irreflexive</i>	88
9.3	<i>Symmetric</i>	88
9.4	<i>Antisymmetric</i>	89
9.5	<i>Transitive</i>	89
9.6	<i>Examples</i>	89
9.7	<i>Exercises</i>	91
10	<i>Equivalence Relations</i>	93
10.1	<i>Equivalence relation</i>	94

10.2	<i>Equivalence class of a relation</i>	94
10.3	<i>Examples</i>	95
10.4	<i>Partitions</i>	97
10.5	<i>Digraph of an equivalence relation</i>	97
10.6	<i>Matrix representation of an equivalence relation</i>	97
10.7	<i>Exercises</i>	99
11	<i>Functions and Their Properties</i>	101
11.1	<i>Definition of function</i>	102
11.2	<i>Functions with discrete domain and codomain</i>	102
11.2.1	<i>Representations by 0-1 matrix or bipartite graph</i>	103
11.3	<i>Special properties</i>	103
11.3.1	<i>One-to-one (injective)</i>	104
11.3.2	<i>Onto (surjective)</i>	105
11.3.3	<i>Bijjective</i>	105
11.4	<i>Composition of functions</i>	106
11.5	<i>Invertible discrete functions</i>	106
11.6	<i>Characteristic functions</i>	108
11.7	<i>Exercises</i>	109
12	<i>Special Functions</i>	111
12.1	<i>Floor and ceiling functions</i>	111
12.2	<i>Fractional part</i>	111
12.3	<i>Integral part</i>	112
12.4	<i>Power functions</i>	112

12.5	<i>Exponential functions</i>	112
12.6	<i>Logarithmic functions</i>	113
12.7	<i>Laws of logarithms</i>	113
12.8	<i>Exercises</i>	115
13	<i>Sequences and Summation</i>	117
13.1	<i>Specifying sequences</i>	117
13.1.1	<i>Defining a Sequence With a Formula</i>	118
13.1.2	<i>Defining a Sequence by Suggestion</i>	118
13.2	<i>Arithmetic sequences</i>	119
13.3	<i>Geometric sequences</i>	120
13.4	<i>Summation notation</i>	120
13.5	<i>Formulas for arithmetic and geometric summations</i>	122
13.6	<i>Exercises</i>	124
14	<i>Recursively Defined Sequences</i>	125
14.1	<i>Closed form formulas</i>	126
14.1.1	<i>Pattern recognition</i>	126
14.1.2	<i>The Fibonacci Sequence</i>	126
14.1.3	<i>The Sequence of Factorials</i>	127
14.2	<i>Arithmetic sequences by recursion</i>	128
14.3	<i>Exercises</i>	129
15	<i>Recursively Defined Sets</i>	131
15.1	<i>Recursive definitions of sets</i>	131
15.2	<i>Sets of strings</i>	133
15.3	<i>Exercises</i>	135

16	<i>Mathematical Induction</i>	137
16.1	<i>Mathematical induction</i>	138
16.2	<i>The principle of mathematical induction</i>	139
16.3	<i>Proofs by induction</i>	140
16.4	<i>Examples</i>	142
16.5	<i>Second principle of mathematical induction</i>	144
16.6	<i>Exercises</i>	148
17	<i>Algorithms</i>	149
17.1	<i>Properties of an algorithm</i>	149
17.2	<i>Non-algorithms</i>	150
17.3	<i>Linear search algorithm</i>	150
17.4	<i>Binary search algorithm</i>	151
17.5	<i>Presenting algorithms</i>	151
17.6	<i>Examples</i>	153
17.7	<i>Exercises</i>	156
18	<i>Algorithm Efficiency</i>	159
18.1	<i>Comparing algorithms</i>	160
18.2	<i>Exercises</i>	163
19	<i>The Growth of Functions</i>	165
19.1	<i>Common efficiency functions</i>	166
19.2	<i>Big-oh notation</i>	166
19.3	<i>Examples</i>	167
19.4	<i>Exercises</i>	168

20	<i>The Integers</i>	169
	20.1 <i>Integer operations</i>	169
	20.2 <i>Order properties</i>	172
	20.3 <i>Exercises</i>	173
21	<i>The divides Relation and Primes</i>	175
	21.1 <i>Properties of divides</i>	175
	21.2 <i>Prime numbers</i>	176
	21.3 <i>The division algorithm for integers</i>	177
	21.4 <i>Exercises</i>	179
22	<i>GCD's and the Euclidean Algorithm</i>	181
	22.1 <i>Euclidean algorithm</i>	182
	22.2 <i>Efficiency of the Euclidean algorithm</i>	183
	22.3 <i>The Euclidean algorithm in quotient/remainder form</i>	184
	22.4 <i>Exercises</i>	186
23	<i>GCD's Reprised</i>	187
	23.1 <i>The $\gcd(a, b)$ as a linear combination of a and b</i>	187
	23.2 <i>Back-solving to express $\gcd(a, b)$ as a linear combination</i>	188
	23.3 <i>Extended Euclidean Algorithm</i>	189
	23.4 <i>General Linear Combinations for $\gcd(a, b)$</i>	192
	23.5 <i>Exercises</i>	194

24	<i>The Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic</i>	195
	24.1 <i>Prime divisors</i>	195
	24.2 <i>Proving the Fundamental Theorem</i>	196
	24.3 <i>Number of positive divisors of n</i>	197
	24.4 <i>Exercises</i>	198
25	<i>Linear Diophantine Equations</i>	199
	25.1 <i>Diophantine equations</i>	200
	25.2 <i>Solutions and $\gcd(a, b)$</i>	200
	25.3 <i>Finding all solutions</i>	201
	25.4 <i>Examples</i>	202
	25.5 <i>Exercises</i>	204
26	<i>Modular Arithmetic</i>	205
	26.1 <i>The modulo m equivalence relation</i>	206
	26.2 <i>Equivalence classes modulo m</i>	207
	26.3 <i>Modular arithmetic</i>	207
	26.4 <i>Solving congruence equations</i>	209
	26.5 <i>Exercises</i>	211
27	<i>Integers in Other Bases</i>	213
	27.1 <i>Converting to and from base-10</i>	213
	27.2 <i>Converting between non-decimal bases</i>	215
	27.3 <i>Computer science bases: 2, 8, and 16</i>	216
	27.4 <i>Exercises</i>	217

28	<i>The Two Fundamental Counting Principles</i>	219
28.1	<i>The sum rule</i>	219
28.1.1	<i>Counting two independent tasks</i>	220
28.1.2	<i>Extended sum rule</i>	221
28.1.3	<i>Sum rule and the logical or</i>	221
28.2	<i>The product rule</i>	221
28.2.1	<i>Counting two sequential tasks: logical and</i>	222
28.2.2	<i>Extended product rule</i>	222
28.2.3	<i>Counting by subtraction: Good = Total – Bad</i>	223
28.3	<i>Using both the sum and product rules</i>	224
28.4	<i>Answer form \longleftrightarrow solution method</i>	226
28.5	<i>Exercises</i>	227
29	<i>Permutations and Combinations</i>	229
29.1	<i>Permutations</i>	229
29.2	<i>Combinations</i>	231
29.3	<i>Exercises</i>	233
30	<i>The Binomial Theorem and Pascal’s Triangle</i>	235
30.1	<i>Combinatorial proof</i>	235
30.1.1	<i>Constructing combinatorial proofs</i>	236
30.2	<i>Pascal’s Triangle</i>	238
30.3	<i>The Binomial Theorem</i>	239
30.4	<i>Exercises</i>	241

31	<i>Inclusion-Exclusion Counting</i>	243
	31.1 <i>Inclusion-Exclusion principle</i>	243
	31.2 <i>Extended inclusion-exclusion principle</i>	245
	31.3 <i>Inclusion-exclusion with the Good=Total-Bad trick</i>	247
	31.4 <i>Exercises</i>	249
32	<i>The Pigeonhole Principle</i>	251
	32.1 <i>General pigeonhole principle</i>	252
	32.2 <i>Examples</i>	252
	32.3 <i>Exercises</i>	254
33	<i>Tougher Counting Problems</i>	255
	33.1 <i>The Basic Donut Shop Problem</i>	256
	33.2 <i>The More Realistic Donut Shop Problem</i>	257
	33.3 <i>The Real Donut Shop Problem</i>	257
	33.4 <i>Problems with order and some repetition</i>	259
	33.5 <i>The six fundamental counting problems</i>	260
	33.6 <i>Exercises</i>	261
34	<i>Counting Using Recurrence Relations</i>	263
	34.1 <i>Recursive counting method</i>	263
	34.2 <i>Examples</i>	266
	34.3 <i>General rules for finding recursive solutions</i>	269
	34.4 <i>Exercises</i>	271

35	<i>Solutions to Recurrence Relations</i>	273
35.1	<i>Solving a recursion by conjecture</i>	273
35.2	<i>Solving a recursion by unfolding</i>	274
35.3	<i>Exercises</i>	276
36	<i>The Method of Characteristic Roots</i>	277
36.1	<i>Homogeneous, constant coefficient recursions</i>	277
36.1.1	<i>Basic example of the method</i>	278
36.1.2	<i>Initial steps: the characteristic equation and its roots</i>	280
36.2	<i>Repeated characteristic roots.</i>	280
36.3	<i>The method of characteristic roots more formally</i>	281
36.4	<i>The method for repeated roots</i>	283
36.5	<i>The general case</i>	284
36.6	<i>Exercises</i>	286
37	<i>Solving Nonhomogeneous Recurrences</i>	287
37.1	<i>Steps to solve nonhomogeneous recurrence relations</i>	287
37.2	<i>Examples</i>	289
37.3	<i>Exercises</i>	292
38	<i>Graphs</i>	293
38.1	<i>Some Graph Terminology</i>	293
38.1.1	<i>Representing a graph in a computer</i>	294

38.2	<i>An Historical Interlude: The origin of graph theory</i>	296
38.3	<i>The First Theorem of Graph Theory</i>	304
38.4	<i>A Brief Catalog of Special Graphs</i>	305
38.5	<i>Graph isomorphisms</i>	307
38.6	<i>Walks</i>	309
38.6.1	<i>Eulerian trails and circuits</i>	311
38.6.2	<i>Hamiltonian cycles</i>	311
38.6.3	<i>Some facts about eulerian and hamiltonian graphs</i>	312
38.7	<i>Trees</i>	314
38.8	<i>Exercises</i>	316
A	<i>Answers</i>	319
B	<i>GNU Free Documentation License</i>	321
1.	<i>APPLICABILITY AND DEFINITIONS</i>	322
2.	<i>VERBATIM COPYING</i>	324
3.	<i>COPYING IN QUANTITY</i>	324
4.	<i>MODIFICATIONS</i>	325
5.	<i>COMBINING DOCUMENTS</i>	328
6.	<i>COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS</i>	328
7.	<i>AGGREGATION WITH INDEPENDENT WORKS</i>	329
8.	<i>TRANSLATION</i>	329
9.	<i>TERMINATION</i>	330
10.	<i>FUTURE REVISIONS OF THIS LICENSE</i>	330
11.	<i>RELICENSING</i>	331
	<i>ADDENDUM: How to use this License for your documents</i>	331

List of Figures

4.1	A logical argument	52
6.1	Venn diagram for $A \cap B$	63
6.2	Venn diagram for $A \cup B$	64
6.3	Venn diagram for $A \oplus B$	64
6.4	Venn diagram for $A - B$	64
6.5	Venn diagram for $\overline{A} = \mathcal{U} - A$	64
8.1	Example bipartite graph	81
8.2	Example digraph	81
8.3	Composing relations: $R \circ S$	84
11.1	Graph of $y = x^2$	102
11.2	A function in 0-1 matrix form	103
12.1	Floor function	111
12.2	Fractional part function	112
12.3	Integral part function	112
12.4	2^x and $\log_2(x)$ functions	113
16.1	4×5 chessboard	143
16.2	$2^3 \times 2^3$ chessboard	143
16.3	Divided $2^3 \times 2^3$ chessboard	144
16.4	$2^3 \times 2^3$ board with domino	144
30.1	Pascal's Triangle	238
30.2	Pascal's Triangle (numeric)	238
31.1	$A \cup B = (A - B) \cup B$	243

38.1 Nonisomorphic graphs with the same degree sequences.	308
38.2 Isomorphic graphs	308
38.3 More Isomorphic graphs	309
38.4 Walks, trails, and paths	310
38.5 Tree for exercise 38.6	318

List of Tables

1.1	Logical Negation	27
1.2	Logical Conjunction	27
1.3	Logical or and xor	28
1.4	Logical Implication	28
1.5	Logical biconditional	29
1.6	Truth table for $(p \wedge q) \rightarrow r$	30
2.1	Prove $p \rightarrow q \equiv \neg p \vee q$	36
2.2	Logical Equivalences	37
4.1	Basic rules of inference	51
4.2	Proof of an argument	52
4.3	Quantification rules	54
6.1	Laws of Set Theory	66
11.1	A simple function	102
19.1	Problem size vs. CPU time used	165
19.2	Common efficiency functions for small values of n	166
19.3	Efficiency functions where $n = 1000000$	166
23.1	$i: 6567(s_i) + 987(t_i) = r_i, q_{i-1}$	190
23.2	$\gcd(107653, 22869)$	191
33.1	Basic counting problems	255
33.2	Six counting problems	260
37.1	Particular solution patterns	288

List of Algorithms

17.1 Linear search (repeat/until). (A ▷ indicates a comment follows.)	152
17.2 Linear search (for loop)	152
17.3 Calculate $\lfloor m/n \rfloor$	153
17.4 Calculate $\lfloor m/n \rfloor$ (again)	154
17.5 Make change	155
18.1 Maximum list value	162

Introduction

DISCRETE MATH HAS BECOME INCREASINGLY IMPORTANT IN RECENT YEARS, FOR A NUMBER OF REASONS:¹

Discrete math is essential to college-level mathematics — and beyond.

Discrete math — together with calculus and abstract algebra — is one of the core components of mathematics at the undergraduate level. Students who learn a significant quantity of discrete math before entering college will be at a significant advantage when taking undergraduate-level math courses.

Discrete math is the mathematics of computing.

The mathematics of modern computer science is built almost entirely on discrete math, in particular combinatorics and graph theory. This means that in order to learn the fundamental algorithms used by computer programmers, students will need a solid background in these subjects. Indeed, at most universities, a undergraduate-level course in discrete mathematics is a required part of pursuing a computer science degree.

Discrete math is very much "real world" mathematics.

Many students' complaints about traditional high school math — algebra, geometry, trigonometry, and the like — is "What is this good for?" The somewhat abstract nature of these subjects often turn off students. By contrast, discrete math, in particular counting and probability, allows students — even at the middle school level — to very quickly explore non-trivial "real world" problems that are challenging and interesting.

¹ *The Art of Problem Solving* <http://www.artofproblemsolving.com/articles/discrete-math>

Discrete math shows up on most middle and high school math contests.

Prominent math competitions such as MATHCOUNTS (at the middle school level) and the American Mathematics Competitions (at the high school level) feature discrete math questions as a significant portion of their contests. On harder high school contests, such as the AIME, the quantity of discrete math is even larger. Students that do not have a discrete math background will be at a significant disadvantage in these contests. In fact, one prominent MATHCOUNTS coach tells us that he spends nearly 50% of his preparation time with his students covering counting and probability topics, because of their importance in MATHCOUNTS contests.

Discrete math teaches mathematical reasoning and proof techniques.

Algebra is often taught as a series of formulas and algorithms for students to memorize (for example, the quadratic formula, solving systems of linear equations by substitution, etc.), and geometry is often taught as a series of "definition-theorem-proof" exercises that are often done by rote (for example, the infamous "two-column proof"). While undoubtedly the subject matter being taught is important, the material (as least at the introductory level) does not lend itself to a great deal of creative mathematical thinking. By contrast, with discrete mathematics, students will be thinking flexibly and creatively right out of the box. There are relatively few formulas to memorize; rather, there are a number of fundamental concepts to be mastered and applied in many different ways.

Discrete math is fun.

Many students, especially bright and motivated students, find algebra, geometry, and even calculus dull and uninspiring. Rarely is this the case with most discrete math topics. When we ask students what their favorite topic is, most respond either "combinatorics" or "number theory." (When we ask them what their least favorite topic is, the overwhelming response is "geometry.") Simply put, most students find discrete math more fun than algebra or geometry.

1

Logical Connectives and Compound Propositions

LOGIC IS CONCERNED WITH FORMS OF REASONING. Since reasoning is involved in most intellectual activities, logic is relevant to a broad range of pursuits. The study of logic is essential for students of computer science. It is also very valuable for mathematics students, and others who make use of mathematical proofs, for instance, linguistics students. In the process of reasoning one makes inferences. In an inference one uses a collection of statements, the premises, in order to justify another statement, the conclusion. The most reliable types of inferences are deductive inferences, in which the conclusion must be true if the premises are. Recall elementary geometry: Assuming that the postulates are true, we prove that other statements, such as the Pythagorean Theorem, must also be true. Geometric proofs, and other mathematical proofs, typically use many deductive inferences. (Robert L. Causey)¹

¹ www.cs.utexas.edu/~rlc/whylog.htm

1.1 Propositions

The basic objects in logic are **propositions**. A proposition is a statement which is either true (*T*) or false (*F*) but not both. For example in the language of mathematics $p : 3 + 3 = 6$ is a true proposition while $q : 2 + 3 = 6$ is a false proposition. *What do you want for lunch?* is a question, not a proposition. Likewise *Get lost!* is a command, not a proposition. The sentence *There are exactly $10^{87} + 3$ stars in the universe* is a proposition, despite the fact that no one knows its truth value.

Here are two, more subtle, examples:

- (1) *He is more than three feet tall* is not a proposition since, until we are told to whom *he* refers, the statement cannot be assigned a truth value. The mathematical sentence $x + 3 = 7$ is not a proposition for the same reason. In general, sentences containing variables are not propositions unless some information is supplied about the variables. More about that later however.
- (2) *This sentence is false* is not a proposition. It seems to be both true and false. In fact if it is *T* then it says it is *F* and if it is *F* then it says it is *T*. It is a good idea to avoid sentences that refer to themselves.

Simple propositions, such as *It is raining*, and *The streets are wet*, can be combined to create more complicated propositions such as *It is raining and the streets are not wet*. These sorts of involved propositions are called **compound propositions**. Compound propositions are built up from simple propositions using a number of **connectives** to join or modify the simple propositions. In the last example, the connectives are **and** which joins the two clauses, and **not**, which modifies the second clause.

It is important to keep in mind that since a compound proposition is, after all, a proposition, it must be classifiable as either true or false. That is, it must be possible to assign a truth value to any compound proposition. There are mutually agreed upon rules to allow the determination of exactly when a compound proposition is true and when it is false. Luckily these rules jive nicely with common sense (with one small exception), so they are easy to remember and understand.

1.2 Negation: *not*

The simplest logical connective is **negation**. In normal English sentences, this connective is indicated by appropriately inserting *not* in the statement, by preceding the statement with *it is not the case that*, or for mathematical statements, by using a slanted slash. For example, if p is the proposition $2 + 3 = 4$, then the negation of p is denoted by the symbol $\neg p$ and it is the proposition $2 + 3 \neq 4$. In this case, p is false and $\neg p$ is true. If p is *It is raining*, then $\neg p$ is *It is not raining* or even the stilted sounding *It is not the case that it is raining*. The

Sometimes a little common sense is required. For example *It is raining* is a proposition, but its truth value is not constant, and may be arguable. That is, someone might say *It is not raining, it is just drizzling*, or *Do you mean on Venus?* Feel free to ignore these sorts of annoyances.

negation of a proposition p is the proposition whose truth value is the opposite of p in all cases. The behavior of $\neg p$ can be exhibited in a **truth table**. In each row of the truth table we list a possible truth value of p and the corresponding truth value of $\neg p$.

p	$\neg p$
T	F
F	T

Table 1.1: Logical Negation

1.3 Conjunction: *and*

The connective that corresponds to the word *and* is called **conjunction**. The conjunction of p with q is denoted by $p \wedge q$ and read as *p and q*. The conjunction of p with q is declared to be true exactly when both of p, q are true. It is false otherwise. This behavior is exhibited in the truth table.

Four rows are required in this table since when p is true, q may be either true or false and when p is false it is possible for q to be either true or false. Since a truth value must be assigned to $p \wedge q$ in every possible case, one row in the truth table is needed for each of the four possibilities.

p	q	$p \wedge q$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	F
F	F	F

Table 1.2: Logical Conjunction

1.4 Disjunction: *or*

The logical connective **disjunction** corresponds to the word *or* of ordinary language. The disjunction of p with q is denoted by $p \vee q$, and read as *p or q*. The disjunction $p \vee q$ is true if at least one of p, q is true.

Disjunction is also called **inclusive-or**, since it includes the possibility that both component statements are true. In everyday language, there is a second use of *or* with a different meaning. For example, in the proposition *Your ticket wins a prize if its serial number contains a 3 or a 5*, the *or* would normally be interpreted in the inclusive sense (tickets that have both a 3 and 5 are still winners), but in the proposition *With dinner you get mashed potatoes or french fries*, the *or* is being used in the **exclusive-or** sense.

The rarely used (at least in mathematics)² exclusive-or is also called the **disjoint disjunction** of p with q and is denoted by $p \oplus q$. Read that as *p xor q* if it is necessary to say it in words. The value of $p \oplus q$ is true if exactly one of p, q is true. The exclusion of both being

² In a mathematical setting, always assume the inclusive-or is intended unless the exclusive sense is explicitly indicated.

true is the difference between inclusive-or and exclusive-or. The truth table shown officially defines these two connectives.

p	q	$p \vee q$	$p \oplus q$
T	T	T	F
T	F	T	T
F	T	T	T
F	F	F	F

Table 1.3: Logical or and xor

1.5 Logical Implication and Biconditional

The next two logical connectives correspond to the ordinary language phrases *If \dots , then \dots* and the (rarely used in real life but common in mathematics) \dots *if and only if \dots* .

1.5.1 Implication: *If \dots , then \dots*

In mathematical discussions, ordinary English words are used in ways that usually correspond to the way we use words in normal conversation. The connectives **not**, **and**, **or** mean pretty much what would be expected. But the **implication**, denoted $p \rightarrow q$ and read as *If p , then q* can be a little mysterious at first. This is partly because when the *If p , then q* construction is used in everyday speech, there is an implied connection between the proposition p (called the **hypothesis**) and the proposition q (called the **conclusion**). For example, in the statement *If I study, then I will pass the test*, there is an assumed connection between studying and passing the test. However, in logic, the connective is going to be used to join any two propositions, with no relation necessary between the hypothesis and conclusion. What truth value should be assigned to such bizarre sentences as *If I study, then the moon is 238,000 miles from earth?*

Is it true or false? Or maybe it is neither one? Well, that last option isn't too pleasant because that sentence is supposed to be a proposition, and to be a proposition it has to have truth value either T or F . So it is going to have to be classified as one or the other. In everyday conversation, the choice isn't likely to be too important whether it is classified it as either true or false in the case described. But an important part of mathematics is knowing when propositions are true and when they are false. The official choices are given in the truth table for $p \rightarrow q$. We can make sense of this with an example.

p	q	$p \rightarrow q$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	T
F	F	T

Table 1.4: Logical Implication

Example 1.1. *First consider the statement which Bill's dad makes to Bill: If you get an A in math, then I will buy you a new car. If Bill gets an A and*

his dad buys him a car, then dad's statement is true, and everyone is happy (that is the first row in the table). In the second row, Bill gets an A, and his dad doesn't come through. Then Bill's going to be rightfully upset since his father lied to him (dad made a false statement). In the last row of the table he can't complain if he doesn't get an A, and his dad doesn't buy him the car (so again dad made a true statement). Most people feel comfortable with those three rows. In the third row of the table, Bill doesn't get an A, and his dad buys him a car anyhow. This is the funny case. It seems that calling dad a liar in this case would be a little harsh on the old man. So it is declared that dad told the truth. Remember it this way: an implication is true unless the hypothesis is true and the conclusion is false.

1.5.2 Biconditional: ... if and only if ...

The **biconditional** is the logical connective corresponding to the phrase ... *if and only if* It is denoted by $p \longleftrightarrow q$, (read *p if and only if q*), and often more tersely written as *p iff q*. The biconditional is true when the two component propositions have the same truth value, and it is false when their truth values are different. Examine the truth table to see how this works.

p	q	$p \longleftrightarrow q$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	F
F	F	T

Table 1.5: Logical biconditional

1.6 Truth table construction

The connectives described above combine at most two simple propositions. More complicated propositions can be formed by joining compound propositions with those connectives. For example, $p \wedge (\neg q)$, $(p \vee q) \rightarrow (q \wedge (\neg r))$, and $(p \rightarrow q) \longleftrightarrow ((\neg p) \vee q)$ are compound propositions, where parentheses have been used, just as in ordinary algebra, to avoid ambiguity. Such extended compound propositions really are propositions. That is, if the truth value of each component is known, it is possible to determine the truth value of the entire proposition. The necessary computations can be exhibited in a truth table.

Example 1.2. Suppose that p, q and r are propositions. To construct a truth table for $(p \wedge q) \rightarrow r$, first notice that eight rows will be needed in the table to account for all the possible combinations of truth values of the simple

component statements p, q and r . This is so since there are, as noted above, four rows needed to account for the choices for p and q , so there will be those four rows paired with r having truth value T , and four more with r having truth value F , for a total of $4 + 4 = 8$. In general, if there are n simple propositions in a compound statement, the truth table for the compound statement will have 2^n rows. Here is the truth table for $(p \wedge q) \rightarrow r$, with an auxiliary column for $p \wedge q$ to serve as an aid for filling in the last column.

p	q	r	$p \wedge q$	$(p \wedge q) \rightarrow r$
T	T	T	T	T
T	T	F	T	F
T	F	T	F	T
T	F	F	F	T
F	T	T	F	T
F	T	F	F	T
F	F	T	F	T
F	F	F	F	T

Table 1.6: Truth table for $(p \wedge q) \rightarrow r$

Be careful about how propositions are grouped. For example, if truth tables for $p \wedge (q \rightarrow r)$ and $(p \wedge q) \rightarrow r$ are constructed, they turn out not to be the same in every row. Specifically if p is false, then $p \wedge q$ is false, and $(p \wedge q) \rightarrow r$ is true. Whereas when p is false $p \wedge (q \rightarrow r)$ is false. So writing $p \wedge q \rightarrow r$ is ambiguous.

1.7 Translating to propositional forms

Here are a few examples of translating between propositions expressed in ordinary language and propositions expressed in the language of logic.

Example 1.3. Let c be the proposition *It is cold* and s : *It is snowing*, and h : *I'm staying home*. Then $(c \wedge s) \rightarrow h$ is the proposition *If it is cold and snowing, then I'm staying home*. While $(c \vee s) \rightarrow h$ is *If it is either cold or snowing, then I'm staying home*. Messier is $\neg(h \rightarrow c)$ which could be expressed as *It is not the case that if I stay home, then it is cold*, which is a little too convoluted for our minds to grasp quickly. Translating in the other direction, the proposition *It is snowing and it is either cold or I'm staying home* would be symbolized as $s \wedge (c \vee h)$.³

³ Notice the parentheses are needed in this last proposition since $(s \wedge c) \vee h$ does not capture the meaning of the ordinary language sentence, and $s \wedge c \vee h$ is ambiguous.

1.8 Bit strings

There is a connection between logical connectives and certain operations on bit strings. There are two **binary digits** (or **bits**): 0 and 1. A **bit string of length n** is any sequence of n bits. For example, 0010 is a bit string of length four. Computers use bit strings to encode and manipulate information. Some bit string operations are really

just disguised truth tables. Here is the connection: Since a bit can be one of two values, bits can be used to represent truth values. Let T correspond to 1, and F to 0. Then given two bits, logical connectives can be used to produce a new bit. For example $\neg 1 = 0$, and $1 \vee 1 = 1$. This can be extended to strings of bits of the same length by combining corresponding bit in the two strings. For example,

$$01011 \wedge 11010 = (0 \wedge 1)(1 \wedge 1)(0 \wedge 0)(1 \wedge 1)(1 \wedge 0) = 01010.$$

1.9 Exercises

Exercise 1.1. Determine which of the following sentences are propositions.

- a) There are seven days in a week.
- b) Get lost!
- c) Pistachio is the best ice cream flavor.
- d) If $x > 1$, then $x^2 + 2x + 1 > 5$.
- e) All unicorns have four legs.

Exercise 1.2. Construct truth tables for each of the following.

- a) $p \oplus \neg q$
- b) $\neg(q \rightarrow p)$
- c) $q \wedge \neg p$
- d) $\neg q \vee p$
- e) $p \rightarrow (\neg q \wedge r)$

Exercise 1.3. Perform the indicated bit string operations. The bit strings are given in groups of four bits each for ease of reading.

- a) $(1101\ 0111 \oplus 1110\ 0010) \wedge 1100\ 1000$
- b) $(1111\ 1010 \wedge 0111\ 0010) \vee 0101\ 0001$
- c) $(1001\ 0010 \vee 0101\ 1101) \wedge (0110\ 0010 \vee 0111\ 0101)$

Exercise 1.4. Let s be the proposition It is snowing and f be the proposition It is below freezing. Convert the following English sentences into statements using the symbols s , f and logical connectives.

- a) It is snowing and it is not below freezing.
- b) It is below freezing and it is not snowing.
- c) If it is not snowing, then it is not below freezing.

Exercise 1.5. Let j be the proposition *Jordan played* and w be the proposition *The Wizards won*. Write the following propositions as English sentences.

a) $\neg j \wedge w$

b) $j \rightarrow \neg w$

c) $w \vee j$

d) $w \rightarrow \neg j$

Exercise 1.6. Let c be the proposition *Sam plays chess*, let b be *Sam has the black pieces*, and let w be *Sam wins*.

a) Translate into English: $(c \wedge \neg b) \rightarrow w$.

b) Translate into symbols: *If Sam didn't win his chess game, then he played black.*

2

Logical Equivalence

IT IS CLEAR THAT the propositions *It is sunny and it is warm* and *It is warm and it is sunny* mean the same thing. More generally, for any propositions p, q , we see that $p \wedge q$ and $q \wedge p$ have the same meaning. To say it a little differently, for any choice of truth values for p and q , the propositions $p \wedge q$ and $q \wedge p$ have the same truth value. One more time: $p \wedge q$ and $q \wedge p$ have identical truth tables.

2.1 Logical Equivalence

Two propositions with identical truth tables are called **logically equivalent**. The expression $p \equiv q$ means p, q are logically equivalent.

Some logical equivalences are not as transparent as the example above. With a little thought it should be clear that *I am not taking math or I am not taking physics* means the same as *It's not the case that I taking math and physics*. In symbols, $(\neg m) \vee (\neg p)$ means the same as $\neg(m \wedge p)$.

To be convinced these two proposition really have the same content, look at the truth table for the two, and notice they are identical.

Example 2.1 (De Morgan). *Prove that $\neg(p \wedge q) \equiv (\neg p \vee \neg q)$ using a truth table. We construct the table using additional columns for compound parts of the two expressions.*

p	q	$p \wedge q$	$\neg(p \wedge q)$	$\neg p$	$\neg q$	$\neg p \vee \neg q$
T	T	T	F	F	F	F
T	F	F	T	F	T	T
F	T	F	T	T	F	T
F	F	F	T	T	T	T

It is probably a little harder to believe $(p \rightarrow q) \equiv (\neg p \vee q)$, but checking a truth table shows they are in fact equivalent. Saying *If it is Monday, then I am tired* is identical to saying *It isn't Monday or I am tired*.

p	q	$p \rightarrow q$	$\neg p \vee q$
T	T		
T	F		
F	T		
F	F		

Table 2.1: Prove $p \rightarrow q \equiv \neg p \vee q$

2.2 Tautologies and Contradictions

A proposition, \mathbb{T} , which is always true is called a **tautology**. A **contradiction** is a proposition, \mathbb{F} , which is always false. The prototype example of a tautology is $p \vee \neg p$, and for a contradiction, $p \wedge \neg p$. Notice that since $p \leftrightarrow q$ is T exactly when p and q have the same truth value, two propositions p and q will be logically equivalent provided $p \leftrightarrow q$ is a tautology.

2.3 Related *If ... , then ...* propositions

There are three propositions related to the basic **If ... , then ...** implication: $p \rightarrow q$. First $\neg q \rightarrow \neg p$ is called the **contrapositive** of the implication. The **converse** of the implication is the proposition $q \rightarrow p$. Finally, the **inverse** of the implication is $\neg p \rightarrow \neg q$. Using a truth table, it is easy to check that an implication and its contrapositive are logically equivalent, as are the converse and the inverse. A common slip is to think the implication and its converse are logically equivalent. Checking a truth table shows that isn't so. The implication *If an integer ends with a 2, then it is even* is T , but its converse, *If an integer is even, then it ends with a 2*, is certainly F .

2.4 Fundamental equivalences

Table 2.2 contains the most often used equivalences. These are well worth learning by sight and by name.

Equivalence	Name
$\neg(\neg p) \equiv p$	Double Negation
$p \wedge \mathbb{T} \equiv p$ $p \vee \mathbb{F} \equiv p$	Identity laws
$p \vee \mathbb{T} \equiv \mathbb{T}$ $p \wedge \mathbb{F} \equiv \mathbb{F}$	Domination laws
$p \vee p \equiv p$ $p \wedge p \equiv p$	Idempotent laws
$p \vee q \equiv q \vee p$ $p \wedge q \equiv q \wedge p$	Commutative laws
$(p \vee q) \vee r \equiv p \vee (q \vee r)$ $(p \wedge q) \wedge r \equiv p \wedge (q \wedge r)$	Associative laws
$p \vee (q \wedge r) \equiv (p \vee q) \wedge (p \vee r)$ $p \wedge (q \vee r) \equiv (p \wedge q) \vee (p \wedge r)$	Distributive laws
$\neg(p \wedge q) \equiv (\neg p \vee \neg q)$ $\neg(p \vee q) \equiv (\neg p \wedge \neg q)$	De Morgan's laws
$p \vee \neg p \equiv \mathbb{T}$	Law of Excluded Middle
$p \wedge \neg p \equiv \mathbb{F}$	Law of Contradiction
$p \rightarrow q \equiv \neg p \vee q$	Disjunctive form
$p \rightarrow q \equiv \neg q \rightarrow \neg p$	Implication \equiv Contrapositive
$\neg p \rightarrow \neg q \equiv q \rightarrow p$	Inverse \equiv Converse

Table 2.2: Logical Equivalences

2.5 Disjunctive normal form

Five basic connectives have been given: $\neg, \wedge, \vee, \rightarrow, \leftrightarrow$, but that is really just for convenience. It is possible to eliminate some of them using logical equivalences. For example, $p \leftrightarrow q \equiv (p \rightarrow q) \wedge (q \rightarrow p)$ so there really is no need to explicitly use the biconditional. Likewise, $p \rightarrow q \equiv \neg p \vee q$, so the use of the implication can also be avoided. Finally, $p \wedge q \equiv \neg(\neg p \vee \neg q)$ so that there really is no need ever to use the connective \wedge . Every proposition made up of the five basic connectives can be rewritten using only \neg and \vee (probably with a great loss of clarity however).

The most often used standardization, or normalization, of logical propositions is the **disjunctive normal form (DNF)**, using only \neg (negation), \wedge (conjunction), and \vee (disjunction). A propositional form is considered to be in DNF if and only if it is a disjunction of one or more conjunctions of one or more literals. For example, the following are all in disjunctive normal form:

- $p \wedge q$
- p
- $(a \wedge q) \vee r$
- $(p \wedge \neg q \wedge \neg r) \vee (\neg s \wedge t \wedge u)$

While, these are **not** in DNF: ¹

- $\neg(p \vee q)$ this is **not** the disjunction of literals.
- $p \wedge (q \wedge (r \vee s))$ an or is embedded in a conjunction.

¹ Use the fundamental equivalences to find DNF versions of each.

2.6 Proving equivalences

It is always possible to verify a logical equivalence via a truth table.

But it is also possible to verify equivalences by stringing together previously known equivalences. Here are two examples of this process.

Example 2.2. Show $\neg(p \vee (\neg p \wedge q)) \equiv \neg p \wedge \neg q$. ²

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \neg(p \vee (\neg p \wedge q)) &\equiv \neg p \wedge \neg(\neg p \wedge q) && \text{De Morgan's Law} \\
 &\equiv \neg p \wedge (\neg(\neg p) \vee \neg q) && \text{De Morgan's Law} \\
 &\equiv \neg p \wedge (p \vee \neg q) && \text{Double Negation Law} \\
 &\equiv (\neg p \wedge p) \vee (\neg p \wedge \neg q) && \text{Distributive Law} \\
 &\equiv (p \wedge \neg p) \vee (\neg p \wedge \neg q) && \text{Commutative Law} \\
 &\equiv \mathbb{F} \vee (\neg p \wedge \neg q) && \text{Law of Contradiction} \\
 &\equiv (\neg p \wedge \neg q) \vee \mathbb{F} && \text{Commutative Law} \\
 &\equiv \neg p \wedge \neg q && \text{Identity Law}
 \end{aligned}$$

² The plan is to start with the expression $\neg(p \vee (\neg p \wedge q))$, work through a sequence of equivalences ending up with $\neg p \wedge \neg q$. It's pretty much like proving identities in algebra or trigonometry.



Example 2.3. Show $(p \wedge q) \rightarrow (p \vee q) \equiv \mathbb{T}$.

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned}
 (p \wedge q) \rightarrow (p \vee q) &\equiv \neg(p \wedge q) \vee (p \vee q) && \text{Disjunctive form} \\
 &\equiv (\neg p \vee \neg q) \vee (p \vee q) && \text{De Morgan's Law} \\
 &\equiv (p \vee \neg p) \vee (q \vee \neg q) && \text{Associative and Commutative Laws} \\
 &\equiv \mathbb{T} \vee \mathbb{T} && \text{Commutative Law and Excluded Middle} \\
 &\equiv \mathbb{T} && \text{Domination Law}
 \end{aligned}$$



2.7 Exercises

Exercise 2.1. Use truth tables to verify each of the following equivalences:

a) $(p \vee q) \vee r \equiv p \vee (q \vee r)$

b) $p \rightarrow q \equiv \neg q \rightarrow \neg p$

c) $\neg p \wedge (p \vee q) \equiv \neg(q \rightarrow p)$

d) $p \vee (q \wedge r) \equiv (p \vee q) \wedge (p \vee r)$

e) $p \rightarrow q \equiv (\neg p \vee q)$

f) $[(p \wedge q) \rightarrow r] \equiv [p \rightarrow (q \rightarrow r)]$

Exercise 2.2. Show that the statements are not logically equivalent.

a) $[p \rightarrow (q \rightarrow r)] \not\equiv [(p \rightarrow q) \rightarrow r]$

b) $(p \rightarrow q) \not\equiv (q \rightarrow p)$

c) $(p \rightarrow q) \not\equiv (\neg p \rightarrow \neg q)$

Exercise 2.3. Use truth tables to show that the following are tautologies.

a) $[p \wedge (p \rightarrow q)] \rightarrow q$

b) $[(p \rightarrow q) \wedge (q \rightarrow r)] \rightarrow (p \rightarrow r)$

c) $(p \wedge q) \rightarrow p$

d) $[(p \vee q) \rightarrow r] \rightarrow [(p \rightarrow r) \wedge (q \rightarrow r)]$

Exercise 2.4. The statements below are not tautologies. In each case, find an assignment of truth values to the literals so the statement is false.

a) $[(p \wedge q) \rightarrow r] \longleftrightarrow [(p \rightarrow r) \wedge (q \rightarrow r)]$

b) $[(p \wedge q) \vee r] \rightarrow [p \wedge (q \vee r)]$

Exercise 2.5. Give proofs of the following equivalences, following the pattern of examples 2.2 and 2.3.

a) $\neg p \rightarrow (p \rightarrow q) \equiv \mathbb{T}$.

b) $(p \wedge \neg r) \rightarrow \neg q \equiv p \rightarrow (q \rightarrow r)$

c) $p \vee (p \wedge q) \equiv p$. (This is a tough one.)

3

Predicates and Quantifiers

THE SENTENCE $x^2 - 2 = 0$ IS NOT a proposition. It cannot be assigned a truth value unless some more information is supplied about the variable x . Such a statement is called a **predicate** or a **propositional function**.

3.1 *Predicates*

Instead of using a single letter to denote a predicate, a symbol such as $S(x)$ will be used to indicate the dependence of the sentence on a variable. Here are two more examples of predicates.

(1) $A(c) : \textit{Al drives a } c$, and

(2) $B(x, y) : \textit{x is the brother of } y$.

With a given predicate, there is an associated set of objects which can be used in place of the variables. For example, in the predicate $S(x) : x^2 - 2 = 0$, it is understood that the x can be replaced by a number. Replacing x by, say, the word *blue* does not yield a meaningful sentence. For the predicate $A(c)$ above, c can be replaced by, say, makes of cars (or maybe types of nails!). For $B(x, y)$, the x can be replaced by any human male, and the y by any human. The collection of possible replacements for a variable in a predicate is called the **domain of discourse** for that variable.

The second example is an instance of a **two-place predicate**.

Usually the domain of discourse is left for the reader to guess, but if the domain of discourse is something other than an obvious choice, the writer will mention the domain to be used.

3.2 Instantiation and Quantification

A predicate is not a proposition, but it can be converted into a proposition. There are three ways to modify a predicate to change it into a proposition. Let's use $S(x) : x^2 - 2 = 0$ as an example.

The first way to change $S(x)$ to make it into a proposition is to assign a specific value from the variable's domain of discourse to the variable. For example, setting $x = 3$, gives the (false) proposition $S(3) : 3^2 - 2 = 0$. On the other hand, setting $x = \sqrt{2}$ gives the (true) proposition $S(\sqrt{2}) : (\sqrt{2})^2 - 2 = 0$. The process of setting a variable equal to a specific object in its domain of discourse is called **instantiation**. Looking at the two-place predicate $B(x, y) : x$ is the brother of y , we can instantiate both variables to get the (true) proposition $B(\text{Donny}, \text{Marie}) : \text{Donny is the brother of Marie}$. Notice that the sentence $B(\text{Donny}, y) : \text{Donny is the brother of } y$ has not been converted into a proposition since it cannot be assigned a truth value without some information about y . But it has been converted from a two-place predicate to a one-place predicate.

A second way to convert a predicate to a proposition is to precede the predicate with the phrase *There is an x such that*. For example, *There is an x such that $S(x)$* would become *There is an x such that $x^2 - 2 = 0$* . This proposition is true if there is at least one choice of x in its domain of discourse for which the predicate becomes a true statement. The phrase *There is an x such that* is denoted in symbols by $\exists x$, so the proposition above would be written as $\exists x S(x)$ or $\exists x (x^2 - 2 = 0)$. When trying to determine the truth value of the proposition $\exists x P(x)$, it is important to keep the domain of discourse for the variable in mind. For example, if the domain for x in $\exists x (x^2 - 2 = 0)$ is all integers, the proposition is false. But if its domain is all real numbers, the proposition is true. The phrase *There is an x such that* (or, in symbols, $\exists x$) is called **existential quantification**¹.

The third and final way to convert a predicate into a proposition is by **universal quantification**². The universal quantification of a predicate, $P(x)$, is obtained by preceding the predicate with the phrase

¹ In English it can also be read as *There exists x* or *For some x* .

² The phrase *For all x* is also rendered in English as *For each x* or *For every x* .

For all x , producing the proposition *For all x , $P(x)$* , or, in symbols, $\forall x P(x)$. This proposition is true provided the predicate becomes a true proposition for every object in the variable's domain of discourse. Again, it is important to know the domain of discourse for the variable since the domain will have an effect on the truth value of the quantified proposition in general.

For multi-placed predicates, these three conversions can be mixed and matched. For example, using the obvious domains for the predicate $B(x, y) : x \text{ is the brother of } y$ here are some conversions into propositions:

- (1) $B(\text{Donny}, \text{Marie})$ has both variables instantiated. The proposition is true.
- (2) $\exists y B(\text{Donny}, y)$ is also a true proposition. It says *Donny* is somebody's brother. The first variable was instantiated, the second was existentially quantified.
- (3) $\forall y B(\text{Donny}, y)$ says everyone has Donny for a brother, and that is false.
- (4) $\forall x \exists y B(x, y)$ says every male is somebody's brother, and that is false.
- (5) $\exists y \forall x B(x, y)$ says there is a person for whom every male is a brother, and that is false.
- (6) $\forall x B(x, x)$ says every male is his own brother, and that is false.

3.3 Translating to symbolic form

Translation between ordinary language and symbolic language can get a little tricky when quantified statements are involved. Here are a few more examples.

Example 3.1. Let $P(x)$ be the predicate *x owns a Porsche*, and let $S(x)$ be the predicate *x speeds*. The domain of discourse for the variable in each predicate will be the collection of all drivers. The proposition $\exists x P(x)$ says *Someone owns a Porsche*. It could also be translated as **There is a person x such that x owns a Porsche**, but that sounds too stilted for

ordinary conversation. A smooth translation is better. The proposition $\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow S(x))$ says **All Porsche owners speed**.

Translating in the other direction, the proposition **No speeder owns a Porsche** could be expressed as $\forall x(S(x) \rightarrow \neg P(x))$.

Example 3.2. Here's a more complicated example: translate the proposition **Al knows only Bill** into symbolic form. Let's use $K(x, y)$ for the predicate x knows y . The translation would be $K(Al, Bill) \wedge \forall x (K(Al, x) \rightarrow (x = Bill))$.

Example 3.3. For one last example, let's translate **The sum of two even integers is even** into symbolic form. Let $E(x)$ be the predicate x is even. As with many statements in ordinary language, the proposition is phrased in a shorthand code that the reader is expected to unravel. As given, the statement doesn't seem to have any quantifiers, but they are implied. Before converting it to symbolic form, it might help to expand it to its more long-winded version: **For every choice of two integers, if they are both even, then their sum is even**. Expressed this way, the translation to symbolic form is duck soup: $\forall x \forall y ((E(x) \wedge E(y)) \rightarrow E(x + y))$.

3.4 Quantification and basic laws of logic

Notice that if the domain of discourse consists of finitely many entries a_1, \dots, a_n , then $\forall x p(x) \equiv p(a_1) \wedge p(a_2) \wedge \dots \wedge p(a_n)$. So the quantifier \forall can be expressed in terms of the logical connective \wedge . The existential quantifier and \vee are similarly linked: $\exists x p(x) \equiv p(a_1) \vee p(a_2) \vee \dots \vee p(a_n)$.

From the associative and commutative laws of logic we see that we can rearrange any system of propositions which are linked only by \wedge 's or linked only by \vee 's.³ Consequently any more generally quantified proposition of the form $\forall x \forall y p(x, y)$ is logically equivalent to $\forall y \forall x p(x, y)$. Similarly for statements which contain only existential quantifiers. But the distributive laws come into play when \wedge 's and \vee 's are mixed. So care must be taken with predicates which contain both existential and universal quantifiers, as the following example shows.

³ For instance, consider examples 3.1 – 3.3 with finite domains of discourse.

Example 3.4. Let $p(x, y) : \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$ and let the domain of discourse be all real numbers for both x and y . The proposition $\forall y \exists x p(x, y)$ is true, since, for any given y , by setting (instantiating) $x = -y$ we convert $\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$ to the true statement $(-y) + y = 0$ ⁴. However the proposition $\exists x \forall y p(x, y)$ is false. If we set (instantiate) $y = 1$, then $\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$ implies that $x = -1$. When we set $y = 0$, we get $x = 0$. Since $0 \neq -1$ there is no x which will work for all y , since it would have to work for the specific values of $y = 0$ and $y = 1$.

⁴ $(\forall y \in \mathbb{R})[(-y) + y = 0]$ is a tautology.

3.5 Negating quantified statements

To form the negation of quantified statements, we apply De Morgan's laws. This can be seen in case of a finite domain of discourse as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \neg(\forall x p(x)) &\equiv \neg(p(a_1) \wedge p(a_2) \wedge \dots \wedge p(a_n)) \\ &\equiv \neg p(a_1) \vee \neg p(a_2) \vee \dots \vee \neg p(a_n) \\ &\equiv \exists x \neg p(x) \end{aligned}$$

In the same way, we have $\neg(\exists x p(x)) \equiv (\forall x \neg p(x))$.⁵

⁵ Use De Morgan's laws to find a similar expression for $\neg(\exists x p(x))$.

3.6 Exercises

Exercise 3.1. Let $p(x) : 2x \geq 4$. Determine the truth values of the following propositions.

- a) $p(2)$
- b) $p(-3)$
- c) $\forall x ((x \leq 10) \rightarrow p(x))$
- d) $\exists x \neg p(x)$

Exercise 3.2. Let $p(x, y)$ be x has read y , where the domain of discourse for x is all students in this class, and the domain of discourse for y is all novels. Express the following propositions in English.

- a) $\forall x p(x, \text{War and Peace})$
- b) $\exists x \neg p(x, \text{The Great Gatsby})$
- c) $\exists x \forall y p(x, y)$
- d) $\forall y \exists x p(x, y)$

Exercise 3.3. Let $F(x, y)$ be the statement x can fool y , where the domain of discourse for both x and y is all people. Use quantifiers to express each of the following statements.

- a) I can fool everyone.
- b) George can't fool anybody.
- c) No one can fool himself.
- d) There is someone who can fool everybody.
- e) There is someone everyone can fool.
- f) Ralph can fool two different people.

Exercise 3.4. Negate each of the statements from exercise 3.2 in English.

Exercise 3.5. Negate each statement from exercise 3.3 in logical symbols. Of course, the easy answer would be to simply put \neg in front of each statement. But use the principle given at the end of this chapter to move the negation across the quantifiers.

Exercise 3.6. *Express symbolically: The product of an even integer and an odd integer is even.*

Exercise 3.7. *Express in words the meaning of*

$$\exists xP(x) \wedge \forall x\forall y ((P(x) \wedge P(y)) \rightarrow (x = y)).$$

4

Rules of Inference

THE HEART OF MATHEMATICS is proof. In this chapter, we give a careful description of what exactly constitutes a proof in the realm of propositional logic. Throughout the course various methods of proof will be demonstrated, including the particularly important style of proof called *induction*. It's important to keep in mind that all proofs, no matter what the subject matter might be, are based on the notion of a valid argument as described in this chapter, so the ideas presented here are fundamental to all of mathematics.

Imagine trying carefully to define what a proof is, and it quickly becomes clear just how difficult a task that is. So it shouldn't come as a surprise that the description takes on a somewhat technical looking aspect. But don't let all the symbols and abstract-looking notation be misleading. All these rules really boil down to plain old common sense when looked at correctly.

The usual form of a theorem in mathematics is: If a is true and b is true and c is true, etc., then s is true. The a, b, c, \dots are called the **hypotheses**, and the statement s is called the **conclusion**. For example, a mathematical theorem might be: if m is an even integer and n is an odd integer, then mn is an even integer. Here the hypotheses are m is an even integer and n is an odd integer, and the conclusion is mn is an even integer.

4.1 Valid propositional arguments

In this section we are going to be concerned with proofs from the realm of propositional logic rather than the sort of theorem from mathematics mentioned above. We will be interested in arguments in which the **form** of the argument is the item of interest rather than the **content** of the statements in the argument.

For example, consider the simple argument: (1) *My car is either red or blue* and (2) *My car is not red*, and so (3) *My car is blue*. Here the hypotheses are (1) and (2), and the conclusion is (3). It should be clear that this is a **valid argument**. That means that if you agree that (1) and (2) are true, then you *must* accept that (3) is true as well.

Definition 4.1. An argument is called **valid** provided that if you agree that all the hypotheses are true, then you must accept the truth of the conclusion.

Now the content of that argument (in other words, the stuff about *my* and *cars* and *colors*) really have nothing to do with the validity of the argument. It is the **form** of the argument that makes it valid. The form of this argument is (1) $p \vee q$ and (2) $\neg p$, therefore (3) q . Any argument that has this form is valid, whether it talks about cars and colors or any other notions. For example, here is another argument of the very same form: (1) *I either read the book or just looked at the pictures* and (2) *I didn't read the book*, therefore (3) *I just looked at the pictures*.

Some arguments involve quantifiers. For instance, consider the classic example of a logical argument: (1) *All men are mortal* and (2) *Socrates is a man*, and so (3) *Socrates is mortal*. Here the hypotheses are the statements (1) and (2), and the conclusion is statement (3). If we let $M(x)$ be *x is a man* and $D(x)$ be *x is mortal* (with domain for x being everything!), then this argument could be symbolized as shown.

$$\frac{\forall x(M(x) \rightarrow D(x)) \quad M(\text{Socrates})}{\therefore D(\text{Socrates})}$$

The general form of a proof that a logical argument is valid consists in assuming all the hypotheses have truth value T , and showing, by applying valid rules of logic, that the conclusion must also have truth value T .

Just what are the valid rules of logic that can be used in the course of the proof? They are called the Rules of Inference, and there are seven of them listed in the table below. Each rule of inference arises from a tautology, and actually there is no end to the rules of inference, since each new tautology can be used to provide a new rule of inference. But, in real life, people rely on only a few basic rules of inference, and the list provided in the table is plenty for all normal purposes.

Name	Rule of Inference	
Modus Ponens	p and $p \rightarrow q$	$\therefore q$
Modus Tollens	$\neg q$ and $p \rightarrow q$	$\therefore \neg p$
Hypothetical Syllogism	$p \rightarrow q$ and $q \rightarrow r$	$\therefore p \rightarrow r$
Addition	p	$\therefore p \vee q$
Simplification	$p \wedge q$	$\therefore p$
Conjunction	p and q	$\therefore p \wedge q$
Disjunctive Syllogism	$p \vee q$ and $\neg p$	$\therefore q$

Table 4.1: Basic rules of inference

It is important not to merely look on these rules as marks on the page, but rather to understand what each one says in words. For example, Modus Ponens corresponds to the common sense rule: if we are told p is true, and also *If p is true, then so is q* , then we would leap to the reasonable conclusion that q is true. That is all Modus Ponens says. Similarly, for the rule of proof of Disjunctive Syllogism: knowing *Either p or q is true*, and p is not true, we would immediately conclude q is true. That's the rule we applied in the *car* example above. Translate the remaining six rules of inference into such common sense statements. Some may sound a little awkward, but they ought to all elicit an *of course that's right* feeling once understood. Without such an understanding, the rules seem like a jumble of mystical symbols, and building logical arguments will be pretty difficult.

What exactly goes into a logical argument? Suppose we want to prove (or show valid) an argument of the form *If a and b and c are true, then so is s* . One way that will always do the trick is to construct a truth table as in examples earlier in the course. We check the rows in the table where all the hypotheses are true, and make sure the

conclusion is also true in those rows. That would complete the proof. In fact that is exactly the method used to justify the seven rules of inference given in the table. But building truth tables is certainly tedious business, and it certainly doesn't seem too much like the way we learned to do proofs in geometry, for example. An alternative is the construction of a logical argument which begins by assuming the hypotheses are all true and applies the basic rules of inferences from the table until the desired conclusion is shown to be true.

Here is an example of such a proof. Let's show that the argument displayed in figure 4.1 is valid.

Each step in the argument will be justified in some way, either (1) as a hypothesis (and hence assumed to have truth value T), or (2) as a consequence of previous steps and some rule of inference from the table, or (3) as a statement logically equivalent to a previous statement in the proof. Finally the last statement in the proof will be the desired conclusion. Of course, we could prove the argument valid by constructing a 32 row truth table instead! Well, actually we wouldn't need all 32 rows, but it would be pretty tedious in any case.

Such proofs can be viewed as games in which the hypotheses serve as the starting position in a game, the goal is to reach the conclusion as the final position in the game, and the rules of inference (and logical equivalences) specify the legal moves. Following this outline, we can be sure every step in the proof is a true statement, and, in particular, the desired conclusion is true, as we hoped to show.

$$\begin{array}{l}
 p \\
 p \rightarrow q \\
 s \vee r \\
 r \rightarrow \neg q \\
 \hline
 \therefore s \vee t
 \end{array}$$

Figure 4.1: A logical argument

Argument:	p	Proof:	(1) p	hypothesis
	$p \rightarrow q$		(2) $p \rightarrow q$	hypothesis
	$s \vee r$		(3) q	Modus Ponens (1) and (2)
	$r \rightarrow \neg q$		(4) $r \rightarrow \neg q$	hypothesis
	\hline		(5) $q \rightarrow \neg r$	logical equivalent of (4)
	$\therefore s \vee t$		(6) $\neg r$	Modus Ponens (3) and (5)
			(7) $s \vee r$	hypothesis
			(8) $r \vee s$	logical equivalence of (7)
			(9) s	Disjunctive Syllogism (6) and (8)
			(10) $s \vee t$	Addition

Table 4.2: Proof of an argument

One step more complicated than the last example are arguments that are presented in words rather than symbols. In such a case, it is necessary to first convert from a verbal argument to a symbolic argument, and then check the argument to see if it is valid. For example, consider the argument: *Tom is a cat. If Tom is a cat, then Tom likes fish. Either Tweety is a bird or Fido is a dog. If Fido is a dog, then Tom does not like fish. So, either Tweety is a bird or I'm a monkey's uncle.* Just reading this argument, it is difficult to decide if it is valid or not. It's just a little too confusing to process. But it is valid, and in fact it is the very same argument as given above. Let p be *Tom is a cat*, let q be *Tom likes fish*, let s be *Tweety is a bird*, let r be *Fido is a dog*, and let t be *I'm a monkey's uncle*. Expressing the statements in the argument in terms of p, q, r, s, t produces exactly the symbolic argument proved above.

4.2 Fallacies

Some logical arguments have a convincing ring to them but are nevertheless invalid. The classic example is an argument of the form *If it is snowing, then it is winter. It is winter. So it must be snowing.* A moment's thought is all that is needed to be convinced the conclusion does not follow from the two hypotheses. Indeed, there are many winter days when it does not snow. The error being made is called the **fallacy of affirming the conclusion**. In symbols, the argument is claiming that $[(p \rightarrow q) \wedge q] \rightarrow p$ is a tautology, but in fact, checking a truth table shows that it is not a tautology. Fallacies arise when statements that are not tautologies are treated as if they were tautologies.

4.3 Arguments with quantifiers

Logical arguments involving propositions using quantifiers require a few more rules of inference. As before, these rules really amount to no more than a formal way to express common sense. For instance, if the proposition $\forall x P(x)$ is true, then certainly for every object c in the universe of discourse, $P(c)$ is true. After all, if the statement $P(x)$ is true for every possible choice of x , then, in particular, it is true when $x = c$. The other three rules of inference for quantified statements are

just as obvious. All four quantification rules appear in table 4.3.

Name	Instantiation Rules
Universal Instantiation	$\forall xP(x) \therefore P(c)$ if c is in the domain of x
Existential Instantiation	$\exists xP(x) \therefore P(c)$ for some c in the domain of x
Name	Generalization Rules
Universal Generalization	$P(c)$ for arbitrary c in the domain of $x \therefore \forall xP(x)$
Existential Generalization	$P(c)$ for some c in the domain of $x \therefore \exists xP(x)$

Table 4.3: Quantification rules

Example 4.2. *Let's analyze the following (fictitious, but obviously valid) argument to see how these rules of inference are used. All books written by Sartre are hard to understand. Sartre wrote a book about kites. So, there is a book about kites that is hard to understand. Let's use the following predicates to symbolize the argument:*

- (1) $S(x)$: x was written by Sartre.
- (2) $H(x)$: x is hard to understand.
- (3) $K(x)$: x is about kites.

The domain for x in each case is all books. In symbolic form, the argument and a proof are

$$\begin{array}{l} \textbf{Argument:} \quad \forall x(S(x) \rightarrow H(x)) \\ \quad \quad \quad \exists x(S(x) \wedge K(x)) \\ \hline \quad \quad \quad \therefore \exists x(K(x) \wedge H(x)) \end{array}$$

Proof: 1) $\exists x(S(x) \wedge K(x))$	<i>hypothesis</i>
2) $S(c) \wedge K(c)$ for some c	<i>Existential Instantiation (1)</i>
3) $S(c)$	<i>Simplification (2)</i>
4) $\forall x(S(x) \rightarrow H(x))$	<i>hypothesis</i>
5) $S(c) \rightarrow H(c)$	<i>Universal Instantiation (4)</i>
6) $H(c)$	<i>Modus Ponens (3) and (5)</i>
7) $K(c) \wedge S(c)$	<i>logical equivalence (2)</i>
8) $K(c)$	<i>Simplification (7)</i>
9) $K(c) \wedge H(c)$	<i>Conjunction (8) and (6)</i>
10) $\exists x(K(x) \wedge H(x))$	<i>Existential Generalization (9)</i>

4.4 Exercises

Exercise 4.1. Show $p \vee q$ and $\neg p \vee r$, $\therefore q \vee r$ is a valid rule of inference.

It is called **Resolution**.

Exercise 4.2. Show that $p \longrightarrow q$ and $\neg p$, $\therefore \neg q$ is not a valid rule of inference. It is called the **Fallacy of denying the hypothesis**.

Exercise 4.3. Prove the following symbolic argument is valid.

$$\begin{array}{l} \neg p \wedge q \\ r \rightarrow p \\ \neg r \rightarrow s \\ s \rightarrow t \\ \hline \therefore t \end{array}$$

Exercise 4.4. Prove the following argument is valid. If Ralph doesn't do his homework or he doesn't feel sick, then he will go to the party and he will stay up late. If he goes to the party, he will eat too much. He didn't eat too much. So Ralph did his homework.

Exercise 4.5. In exercise 4.4, show that you can logically deduce that Ralph felt sick.

Exercise 4.6. In exercise 4.4, can you logically deduce that Ralph stayed up late?

Exercise 4.7. Prove the following symbolic argument.

$$\begin{array}{l} \exists x(A(x) \wedge \neg B(x)) \\ \forall x(A(x) \longrightarrow C(x)) \\ \hline \therefore \exists x(C(x) \wedge \neg B(x)) \end{array}$$

Exercise 4.8. Prove the following argument is valid. All Porsche owners are speeders. No owners of sedans buy premium fuel. Car owners that do not buy premium fuel never speed. So Porsche owners do not own sedans. Use all car owners as the domain of discourse.

5

Sets: Basic Definitions

A **set** IS A COLLECTION OF OBJECTS. Often, but not always, sets are denoted by capital letters such as A, B, \dots and the objects that make up a set, called its **elements**, are denoted by lowercase letters. Write $x \in A$ to mean that the object x is an element of A . If the object x is not an element of A , write $x \notin A$.

Two sets A and B are **equal**, written $A = B$ provided A and B comprise exactly the same elements. Another way to say the same thing: $A = B$ provided $\forall x (x \in A \longleftrightarrow x \in B)$.

5.1 Specifying sets

There are a number of ways to specify a given set. We consider two of them.

5.1.1 Roster method

One way to describe a set is to list its elements. This is called the **roster method**. Braces are used to signify when the list begins and where it ends, and commas are used to separate elements. For instance, $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$ is the set of positive whole numbers between 1 and 5 inclusive. It is important to note that the order in which elements are listed is immaterial. For example, $\{1, 2\} = \{2, 1\}$ since $x \in \{1, 2\}$ and $x \in \{2, 1\}$ are both true for $x = 1$ and $x = 2$ and false for all other choices of x . Thus $x \in \{1, 2\}$ and $x \in \{2, 1\}$ always have the same truth value, and that means $\forall x (x \in \{1, 2\} \longleftrightarrow x \in \{2, 1\})$

is true. According to the definition of equality given above, it follows that $\{1, 2\} = \{2, 1\}$. The same sort of reasoning shows that repetitions in the list of elements of a set can be ignored. For example $\{1, 2, 3, 2, 4, 1, 2, 3, 2\} = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$. There is no point in listing an element of a set more than once.

The roster method has certain drawbacks. For example we probably don't want to list all of the elements in the set of positive integers between 1 and 99 inclusive. One option is to use an **ellipsis**. The idea is that we list elements until a pattern is established, and then replace the missing elements with \dots (which is the ellipsis). So $\{1, 2, 3, 4, \dots, 99\}$ would describe our set.

The use of an ellipsis has one pitfall. It is **hoped** that whoever is reading the list will be able guess the proper pattern and apply it to fill in the gap.

5.1.2 Set-builder notation

Another method to specify a set is via the use of **set-builder notation**. A set can be described in set-builder notation as $A = \{x | p(x)\}$. Here we read A is the set of all objects x for which the predicate $p(x)$ is true. So $\{1, 2, 3, 4, \dots, 99\}$ becomes $\{x | x \text{ is a whole number and } 1 \leq x \leq 99\}$.

5.2 Special standard sets

Certain sets occur often enough that we have special notation for them.

$\mathbb{N} = \{x | x \text{ is a non-negative whole number}\} = \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$, **the natural numbers.**

$\mathbb{Z} = \{x | x \text{ is a whole number}\} = \{\dots, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, \dots\}$, **the integers.**

$\mathbb{Q} = \{x | x = \frac{p}{q}, p \text{ and } q \text{ integers with } q \neq 0\}$, **the rational numbers.**

$\mathbb{R} = \{x | x \text{ is a real number}\}$, **the real numbers.**

$\mathbb{C} = \{x | x = a + ib, a, b \in \mathbb{R}, i^2 = -1\}$, **the complex numbers.**

5.3 Empty and universal sets

In addition to the above sets, there is a set with no elements, written as \emptyset (also written using the roster style as $\{\}$), and called the **empty set**. This set can be described using set builder style in many differ-

ent ways. For example, $\{x \in \mathbb{R} \mid x^2 = -2\} = \emptyset$. In fact, if $P(x)$ is any predicate which is always false, then $\{x \mid P(x)\} = \emptyset$. There are two easy slips to make involving the empty set. First, don't write $\emptyset = 0$ (the idea being that both \emptyset and 0 represent *nothing*¹). That is not correct since \emptyset is a set, and 0 is a number, and it's not fair to compare two different types of objects. The other error is thinking $\emptyset = \{\emptyset\}$. This cannot be correct since the right-hand set has an element, but the left-hand set does not.

¹ One is empty the other is something, namely zero.

At the other extreme from the empty set is the **universal set**, denoted \mathcal{U} . The universal set consists of all objects under consideration in any particular discussion. For example, if the topic du jour is basic arithmetic then the universal set would be the set of all integers. Usually the universal set is left for the reader to guess. If the choice of the universal set is not an obvious one, it will be pointed out explicitly.

5.4 Subset and equality relations

The set A is a **subset** of the set B , written as $A \subseteq B$, in case $\forall x(x \in A \rightarrow x \in B)$ is true. In plain English, $A \subseteq B$ if every element of A also is an element of B . For example, $\{1, 2, 3\} \subseteq \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$. On the other hand, $\{0, 1, 2, 3\} \not\subseteq \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$ since 0 is an element of the left-hand set but not of the right-hand set. The meaning of $A \not\subseteq B$ can

be expressed in symbols using De Morgan's law:

$$\begin{aligned} A \not\subseteq B &\longleftrightarrow \neg(\forall x(x \in A \rightarrow x \in B)) \\ &\equiv \exists x \neg(x \in A \rightarrow x \in B) \\ &\equiv \exists x \neg(\neg(x \in A) \vee x \in B) \\ &\equiv \exists x(x \in A \wedge x \notin B) \end{aligned}$$

and that last line says $A \not\subseteq B$ provided there is at least one element of A that is not an element of B .

The empty set is a subset of every set. To check that, suppose A is any set, and let's check to make sure $\forall x(x \in \emptyset \rightarrow x \in A)$ is true. But it is since for any x , the hypothesis of $x \in \emptyset \rightarrow x \in A$ is F , and so the implication is T . So $\emptyset \subseteq A$. Another way to say the same

thing is to notice that to claim $\emptyset \not\subseteq A$ is the same as claiming there is at least one element of \emptyset that is not an element of A , but that is ridiculous, since \emptyset has no elements at all.

To say that $A = B$ is the same as saying every element of A is also an element of B and every element of B is also an element of A . In other words, $A = B \iff (A \subseteq B \wedge B \subseteq A)$, and this indicates the method by which the common task of showing two sets are equal is carried out: to show two sets are equal, show that each is a subset of the other.

If $A \subseteq B$, and $A \neq B$, A is a **proper subset** of B , denoted by $A \subset B$, or $A \subsetneq B$. In words, $A \subset B$ means every element of A is also an element of B and there is at least one element of B that is not an element of A . For example $\{1, 2\} \subset \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$, and $\emptyset \subset \{1\}$.

5.5 Cardinality

A set is **finite** if the number of distinct elements in the set is a non-negative integer. In this case we call the number of distinct elements in the set its **cardinality** and denote this natural number by $|A|$. For example, $|\{1, 3, 5\}| = 3$ and $|\emptyset| = 0$, $|\{\emptyset\}| = 1$, and $|\{\emptyset, \{a, b, c\}, \{X, Y\}\}| = 3$. A set, such as \mathbb{Z} , which is not finite, is **infinite**.

5.6 Power set

Given a set A the **power set of A** , denoted $\mathcal{P}(A)$, is the set of all subsets of A . For example if $A = \{1, 2\}$, then $\mathcal{P}(A) = \{\emptyset, \{1\}, \{2\}, \{1, 2\}\}$.

For a more confusing example, the power set of $\{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\}^2$ is

$$\mathcal{P}(\{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\}) = \{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}, \{\{\emptyset\}\}, \{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\}\}.$$

It is not hard to see that if $|A| = n$, then $|\mathcal{P}(A)| = 2^n$.

² Try finding the power set of the empty set: $\mathcal{P}(\emptyset)$.

5.7 Exercises

Exercise 5.1. List the members of the following sets.

a) $\{x \in \mathbb{Z} \mid 3 \leq x^3 < 100\}$

b) $\{x \in \mathbb{R} \mid 2x^2 = 50\}$

c) $\{x \in \mathbb{N} \mid 7 > x \geq 4\}$

Exercise 5.2. Use set-builder notation to give a description of each set.

a) $\{-5, 0, 5, 10, 15\}$

b) $\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$

c) The interval of real numbers: $[\pi, 4)$

Exercise 5.3. Determine the cardinality of the sets in exercises 1 and 2.

Exercise 5.4. Is the proposition Every element of the empty set has three toes true or false? Explain your answer!

Exercise 5.5. Determine the power set of $\{1, \emptyset, \{1\}\}$.

6

Set Operations

THERE ARE SEVERAL ways of combining sets to produce new sets.

6.1 Intersection

The **intersection** of A with B denoted $A \cap B$ is defined as $\{x | x \in A \wedge x \in B\}$. For example $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\} \cap \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\} = \{1, 3, 5\}$. So the intersection of two sets consists of the objects which are in both sets simultaneously. Two sets are **disjoint** if $A \cap B = \emptyset$.

6.2 Venn diagrams

Set operations can be visualized using **Venn diagrams**. A circle (or other closed curve) is drawn to represent a set. The points inside the circle are used to stand for the elements of the set. To represent the set operation of intersection, two such circles are drawn with an overlap to indicate the two sets may share some elements. In the Venn diagram below, the shaded area represents the intersection of A and B .

6.3 Union

The **union** of A with B denoted $A \cup B$ is $\{x | x \in A \vee x \in B\}$. In words, $A \cup B$ consists of those elements that appear in at least one of A and B . So for example $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\} \cup \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\} = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 9\}$.

The Venn Diagram representing

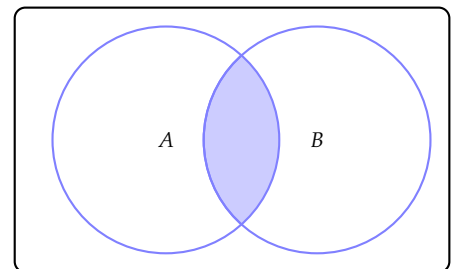


Figure 6.1: Venn diagram for $A \cap B$

the union of A and B looks like this:

6.4 Symmetric difference

The **symmetric difference** of A and B is defined to be $A \oplus B = \{x \mid x \in A \oplus x \in B\}$. So $A \oplus B$ consists of those elements which appear in exactly one of A and B . For example $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\} \oplus \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\} = \{2, 4, 7, 9\}$. The Venn diagram looks like

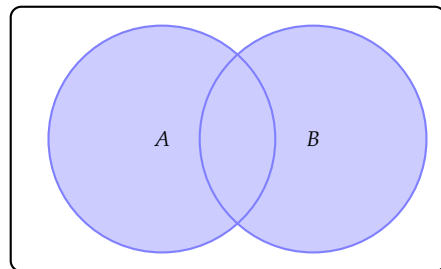


Figure 6.2: Venn diagram for $A \cup B$

6.5 Complement

The **complement of B relative to A** , denoted $A - B$ is $\{x \mid x \in A \wedge x \notin B\}$. So $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\} - \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\} = \{2, 4\}$. The Venn diagram looks like

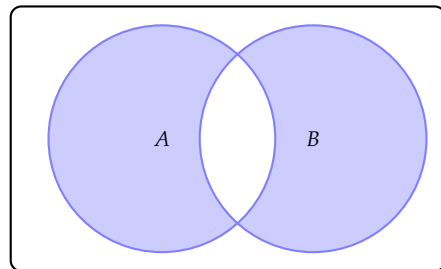


Figure 6.3: Venn diagram for $A \oplus B$

When \mathcal{U} is a universal set, we denote $\mathcal{U} - A$ by \overline{A} and call it the **complement** of A . If $\mathcal{U} = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9\}$, then $\overline{\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}} = \{5, 6, 7, 8, 9\}$. The universal set matters here. If $\mathcal{U} = \{x \in \mathbb{N} \mid x \leq 100\}$, then $\overline{\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}} = \{5, 6, 7, 8, \dots, 100\}$.

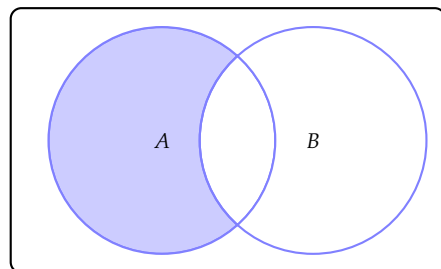


Figure 6.4: Venn diagram for $A - B$

6.6 Ordered lists

The order in which elements of a set are listed does not matter. But there are times when order is important. For example, in a horse race, knowing the order in which the horses cross the finish line is more interesting than simply knowing which horses were in the race. There is a familiar way, introduced in algebra, of indicating order is important: ordered pairs. Ordered pairs of numbers are used to specify points in the Euclidean plane when graphing functions. For instance, when graphing $y = 2x + 1$, setting $x = 3$ gives $y = 7$, and so the ordered pair $(3, 7)$ will indicate one of the points on the graph.

In this course, ordered pairs of any sorts of objects, not just numbers, will be of interest. An **ordered pair** is a collection of two objects (which might both be the same) with one specified as first (the first coordinate) and the other as second (the second coordinate). The ordered pair with a specified as first and b as second is written (as usual) (a, b) . The most important feature of ordered pairs is that

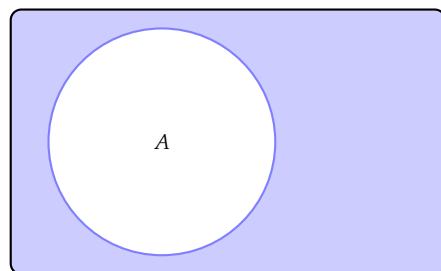


Figure 6.5: Venn diagram for $\overline{A} = \mathcal{U} - A$

$(a, b) = (c, d) \iff a = c \text{ and } b = d$. In words, two ordered pairs are equal provided they match in both coordinates. So $(1, 2) \neq (2, 1)$.

More generally, an **ordered n -tuple** (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) is the ordered collection with a_1 as its first coordinate, a_2 as its second coordinate, and so on. Two ordered n -tuples are equal provided they match in every coordinate.

6.7 Cartesian product

The last operation to be considered for combining sets is the **Cartesian product** of two sets A and B . It is defined by $A \times B = \{(a, b) | a \in A \wedge b \in B\}$. In other words, $A \times B$ comprises all ordered pairs that can be formed taking the first coordinate from A and the second coordinate from B . For example if $A = \{1, 2\}$, and $B = \{\alpha, \beta\}$, then $A \times B = \{(1, \alpha), (2, \alpha), (1, \beta), (2, \beta)\}$. Notice that in this case $A \times B \neq B \times A$ since, for example, $(1, \alpha) \in A \times B$, but $(1, \alpha) \notin B \times A$.

A special case occurs when $A = B$. In this case we denote the Cartesian product of A with itself by A^2 . The familiar example $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} = \mathbb{R}^2$ is called the Euclidean plane or the Cartesian plane.

More generally given sets A_1, \dots, A_n the Cartesian product of these sets is written as $A_1 \times A_2 \times \dots \times A_n = \{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) | a_i \in A_i, 1 \leq i \leq n\}$. Also A^n denotes the Cartesian product of A with itself n times.

In order to avoid the use of an ellipsis we also denote the Cartesian product of A_1, \dots, A_n as $\prod_{k=1}^n A_k$. The variable k is called the **index** of the product. Most often the index is a whole number. Unless we are told otherwise we start with $k = 1$ and increment k by 1 successively until we reach n . So if we are given A_1, A_2, A_3, A_4 , and A_5 ,

$$\prod_{k=1}^5 A_k = A_1 \times A_2 \times A_3 \times A_4 \times A_5.$$

6.8 Laws of set theory

There is a close connection between many set operations and the logical connectives of Chapter 1. The intersection operation is related to conjunction, union is related to disjunction, and complementation is related to negation. It is not surprising then that the various laws

of logic, such as the associative, commutative, and distributive laws carry over to analogous laws for the set operations. Table 6.1 exhibits some of these properties of these set operations.

Identity	Name
$\overline{\overline{A}} = A$	Double Negation
$A \cap \mathcal{U} = A$ $A \cup \emptyset = A$	Identity laws
$A \cup \mathcal{U} = \mathcal{U}$ $A \cap \emptyset = \emptyset$	Domination laws
$A \cup A = A$ $A \cap A = A$	Idempotent laws
$A \cup B = B \cup A$ $A \cap B = B \cap A$	Commutative laws
$(A \cup B) \cup C = A \cup (B \cup C)$ $(A \cap B) \cap C = A \cap (B \cap C)$	Associative laws
$A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$ $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$	Distributive laws
$\overline{(A \cap B)} = (\overline{A} \cup \overline{B})$ $\overline{(A \cup B)} = (\overline{A} \cap \overline{B})$	De Morgan's laws
$A \cup \overline{A} = \mathcal{U}$	Law of Excluded Middle
$A \cap \overline{A} = \emptyset$	Law of Contradiction

Table 6.1: Laws of Set Theory

These can be verified by using **membership tables** which are the analogs of truth tables used to verify the logical equivalence of propositions. For a set A either an element under consideration is in A or it is not. These binary possibilities are kept track of using 1 if $x \in A$ and 0 if $x \notin A$, and then performing related bit string operations.

Example 6.1. Verify the De Morgan's law given by $\overline{(A \cap B)} = \overline{A} \cup \overline{B}$.

A	B	$A \cap B$	$\overline{(A \cap B)}$	\overline{A}	\overline{B}	$\overline{A} \cup \overline{B}$
1	1	1	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	1	0	1	1
0	1	0	1	1	0	1
0	0	0	1	1	1	1

The meaning of the first row of the table is that if $x \in A$ and $x \in B$, then $x \notin \overline{A \cap B}$, as indicated by the 0 in the first row, fourth column, and also

not in $\overline{A} \cup \overline{B}$ as indicated by the 0 in the first row, last column. Since the columns for $\overline{A \cap B}$ and $\overline{A} \cup \overline{B}$ are identical, it follows that $\overline{(A \cap B)} = \overline{A} \cup \overline{B}$ as promised.

6.9 Proving set identities

Just as compound propositions can be analyzed using truth tables, more complicated combinations of sets can be handled using membership tables. For example, using a membership table, it is easy to verify that $\overline{A \cup (B \cap C)} = \overline{A} \cap (\overline{B} \cup \overline{C})$. But, just as with propositions, it is usually more enlightening to verify such equalities by applying the few basic laws of set theory listed above.

Example 6.2. Let's prove $\overline{A \cup (B \cap C)} = \overline{A} \cap (\overline{B} \cup \overline{C})$

Proof. The proof is just two applications of De Morgan's laws:

$$\overline{A \cup (B \cap C)} = \overline{A} \cap (\overline{B \cap C}) = \overline{A} \cap (\overline{B} \cup \overline{C}).$$



6.10 Bit string operations

There is a correspondence between set operations of finite sets and bit string operations. Let $\mathcal{U} = \{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n\}$ be a finite universal set with distinct elements listed in a specific order¹ For a set A under consideration, we have $A \subseteq \mathcal{U}$. By the law of excluded middle, for each $u_j \in \mathcal{U}$, either $u_j \in A$ or $u_j \notin A$. We define a binary string of length n , called the **characteristic vector** of A , denoted $\chi(A)$, by setting the j th bit of $\chi(A)$ to be 1 if $u_j \in A$ and 0 if $u_j \notin A$. For example if $\mathcal{U} = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9\}$, and $A = \{1, 3, 4, 5, 8\}$, then $\chi(A) = 101110010$.

An interesting side-effect is that for example $\chi(A \cap B) = \chi(A) \wedge \chi(B)$ ², $\chi(A \cup B) = \chi(A) \vee \chi(B)$ and $\chi(\overline{A}) = \neg \chi(A)$. Since every proposition can be expressed using \wedge , \vee and \neg , if we represent sets by their characteristic vectors, we can get a machine to perform set operations as logical operations on bit strings. This is the method programmers use to manipulate sets in computer memory.

¹ Notice the universal set is **ordered**. We may write it as an n -tuple: $\mathcal{U} = (u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n)$.

² As a function, we say that χ maps intersection to conjunction

6.11 Exercises

Exercise 6.1. Let $A = \{2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8\}$ and $B = \{1, 2, 4, 6, 7, 8, 9\}$. Find

a) $A \cap B$

b) $A \cup B$

c) $A - B$

d) $B - A$

Exercise 6.2. Determine the sets A and B , if $A - B = \{1, 2, 7, 8\}$, $B - A = \{3, 4, 10\}$ and $A \cap B = \{5, 6, 9\}$.

Exercise 6.3. Use membership tables to show that $A \oplus B = (A \cup B) - (A \cap B)$.

Exercise 6.4. Do exercise 3 using Venn diagrams.

Exercise 6.5. Verify $A \cup (A \cap B) = A$.

Exercise 6.6. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$, $B = \{a, b, c\}$, $C = \{\alpha, \beta\}$, and $D = \{7, 8, 9\}$. Write out the following Cartesian products.

(a) $A \times B$ (b) $B \times A$ (c) $C \times B \times D$

Exercise 6.7. What can you conclude about A and B if $A \times B = B \times A$.

Exercise 6.8. If $\mathcal{U} = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9\}$, determine $\chi(\{1, 2, 4, 8\})$.

Exercise 6.9. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3\} \times \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$. List the elements of the set $B = \{(s, t) \in A \mid s < t\}$.

7

Styles of Proof

EARLIER, WE PRACTICED PROVING the validity of logical arguments, both with and without quantifiers. The technique introduced there is one of the main tools for constructing proofs in a more general setting. In this chapter, various common styles of proof in mathematics are described. Recognizing these styles of proof will make both reading and constructing proofs a little less onerous.

The example proofs in this chapter will use some familiar facts about integers, which we will prove in a later chapter.

7.1 *Direct proof*

As mentioned before, the typical form of the statement of a theorem is: *if a and b and c and \dots , then d* . The propositions a, b, c, \dots are called the hypotheses, and the proposition d is called the conclusion. The goal of the proof is to show that $(a \wedge b \wedge c \wedge \dots) \rightarrow d$ is a true proposition. In the case of propositional logic, the only thing that matters is the *form* of a logical argument, not the particular propositions that are involved. That means the proof can always be given in the form of a truth table. In areas outside of propositional logic that is no longer possible. Now the content of the propositions must be considered. In other words, what the words mean, and not merely how they are strung together, becomes important.

Suppose we want to prove an implication **Theorem:** *If p , then q* . In other words, we want to show $p \rightarrow q$ is true. There are two possibilities: Either p is false, in which case $p \rightarrow q$ is automatically true, or p is true. In this second case, we need to show that q is true

as well to conclude $p \rightarrow q$ is true. In other words, to show $p \rightarrow q$ is true, we can begin by assuming p is true, and then give an *argument* that q must be true as well. The outline of such a proof will look like:

Proof:	
Step 1)	Reason 1
Step 2)	Reason 2
⋮	⋮
Step l)	Reason l
♣	

Every step in the proof must be a true proposition, and since the goal is to conclude q is true, the proposition q will be the last step in the proof. **There are only four acceptable reasons** that can be invoked to justify a step in a proof. Each step can be: (1) a *hypothesis* (and so assumed to be true), (2) an application of a *definition*, (3) a *known fact* proved previously, and so known to be true, or (4) a consequence of applying a *rule of inference* or a *logical equivalence* to earlier steps in the proof. The only difference between these sorts of formal proofs and the proofs of logical arguments we practiced earlier is the inclusion of definitions as a justification of a step.

Before giving a few examples, there is one more point to consider. Most theorems in mathematics involve variables in some way, along with either universal or existential quantifiers. But, in the case of universal quantifiers, tradition dictates that the mention of the quantifier is often suppressed, and left for the reader to fill in. For example consider: **Theorem:** *If n is an even integer, then n^2 is an even integer.* The statement is really shorthand for **Theorem:** *For every $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, if n is even, then n^2 is even.* If we let $E(n)$ be the predicate n is even with universe of discourse \mathbb{Z} , the theorem becomes **Theorem:** $\forall n(E(n) \rightarrow E(n^2))$. The truth of such a universally quantified statement can be accomplished with an application of the rule of universal generalization. In other words, we prove that for an arbitrary $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, the proposition $E(n) \rightarrow E(n^2)$ is true. The result is stated and proved in the next theorem.

Theorem 7.1. *If n is an even integer, then n^2 is an even integer.*

Proof.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1) n is an even integer | hypothesis |
| 2) $n = 2k$ for an integer k | definition of even |
| 3) $n^2 = 4k^2$ | algebra fact |
| 4) $n^2 = 2(2k^2)$ | algebra fact |
| 5) n^2 is even | definition of even |



Usually proofs are not presented in the dry stepwise style of the last example. Instead, a more narrative style is used. So the above proof could go as follows:

Proof. *Suppose n is an even integer. That means $n = 2k$ for some integer k . Squaring both sides gives $n^2 = (2k)^2 = 4k^2 = 2(2k^2)$ which shows n^2 is even. ♣*

All the ingredients of the stepwise proof are present in the narrative form, but this second form is a little more reader friendly. For example, we can include a few comments, such as *squaring both sides gives* to help the reader figure out what is happening.

The method of proof given above is called **direct proof**. The characteristic feature of a direct proof is that in the course of the proof, the hypotheses appear as steps, and the last step in the proof is the conclusion of the theorem.

It is traditional to put a marker (such as ♣, to indicate the theorem has been **clubbed!**) at the end of a narrative form of a proof to let the reader know the proof is complete.

Here is one more example of a direct proof.

Theorem 7.2. *If n and m are odd integers, then $n + m$ is even.*

Proof. *Suppose m and n are odd integers. That means $m = 2j + 1$ for some integer j , and $n = 2k + 1$ for some integer k . Adding gives $m + n = (2j + 1) + (2k + 1) = 2j + 2k + 2 = 2(j + k + 1)$, and so we see $m + n$ is even. ♣*

7.2 Indirect proof

There are cases where a direct proof is not very convenient for one reason or another. There are several other styles of proof, each based on some logical equivalence.

For example, since $p \rightarrow q \equiv \neg q \rightarrow \neg p$, we can prove the

Theorem 7.3. $p \rightarrow q$

by instead giving a proof of

Theorem 7.4. $\neg q \rightarrow \neg p$.

In other words, we replace the requested implication with its contrapositive, and prove that instead. This method of proof is called **indirect proof**. Here's an example.

Theorem 7.5. *If m^2 is an even integer, then m is an even integer.*

Proof. *Suppose m is not even. Then m is odd. So $m = 2k + 1$ for some integer k . Squaring both sides of that equation gives $m^2 = (2k + 1)^2 = 4k^2 + 4k + 1 = 2(2k^2 + 2k) + 1$, which shows m^2 is not even. ♣*

Notice that we gave a *direct proof* of the equivalent theorem: *If m is not an even integer, then m^2 is not an even integer.*

7.3 Proof by contradiction

Another alternative to a direct proof is **proof by contradiction**. In this method the plan is to replace the requested **Theorem:** r (where r can be any simple or compound proposition) with **Theorem:** $\neg r \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$, where \mathbb{F} is any proposition known to be false. The reason proof by contradiction is a valid form of proof is that $\neg r \rightarrow \mathbb{F} \equiv r$, so that showing $\neg r \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$ is true is identical to showing r is true. Proofs by contradiction can be a bit more difficult to discover than direct or indirect proofs. The reason is that in those two types of proof, we know exactly what the last line of our proof will be. We know where we want to get to. But in a proof by contradiction, we only know that we want to end up with some (any) proposition known to be false. Typically, when writing a proof by contradiction, we experiment,

trying various logical arguments, hoping to stumble across some false proposition, and so conclude the proof. For example, consider the following.

Theorem 7.6. $\sqrt{2}$ is irrational.

The plan is to replace the requested theorem with

Theorem 7.7. If $\sqrt{2}$ is rational, then \mathbb{F} (some fact known to be false).

And now, we may give a direct proof of this replacement theorem:

Proof. Suppose that $\sqrt{2}$ is rational. Then there exist integers m and n with $n \neq 0$, so that $\sqrt{2} = \frac{m}{n}$, with $\frac{m}{n}$ in lowest terms. Squaring both sides gives $2 = \frac{m^2}{n^2}$. Thus $m^2 = 2n^2$ and so m^2 is even. Therefore m is even. So $m = 2k$ for some integer k . Substituting $2k$ for m in $m^2 = 2n^2$ shows $(2k)^2 = 4k^2 = 2n^2$. Which means that $n^2 = 2k^2$. Therefore n^2 is even, which means n is even. Now since both m and n are even, they have 2 as a common factor. Therefore $\frac{m}{n}$ is not in lowest terms. \dashv ♣

The symbol \dashv (two arrows crashing into each other head on) denotes that we have reached a *fallacy* (\mathbb{F}), a statement known to be false. It usually marks the end of a proof by contradiction.

In the next example, we will prove a proposition of the form $p \rightarrow q$ by contradiction. The theorem is about real numbers x and y .

Theorem 7.8. If $0 < x < y$, then $\sqrt{x} < \sqrt{y}$.

Think of the statement of the theorem in the form $p \rightarrow q$. The plan is to replace the requested theorem with

Theorem 7.9. $\neg(p \rightarrow q) \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$.

But $\neg(p \rightarrow q) \equiv \neg(\neg p \vee q) \equiv p \wedge \neg q$. So we will actually prove $(p \wedge \neg q) \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$. In other words, we will prove (directly)

Theorem 7.10. If $0 < x < y$ and $\sqrt{x} \geq \sqrt{y}$, then (some fallacy).

Proof. Suppose $0 < x < y$ and $\sqrt{x} \geq \sqrt{y}$. Since $\sqrt{x} > 0$, $\sqrt{x}\sqrt{x} \geq \sqrt{x}\sqrt{y}$, which is the same as $x \geq \sqrt{xy}$. Also, since $\sqrt{y} > 0$, $\sqrt{y}\sqrt{x} \geq \sqrt{y}\sqrt{y}$, which is the same as $\sqrt{xy} \geq y$. Putting $x \geq \sqrt{xy}$ and $\sqrt{xy} \geq y$ together, we conclude $x \geq y$. Thus $x < y$ and $x \geq y$. \dashv ♣

7.4 Proof by cases

The only other common style of proof is **proof by cases**. Let's first look at the justification for this proof technique. Suppose we are asked to prove

Theorem 7.11 (Theorem X). $p \rightarrow q$.

We dream up some propositions, r and s , and replace the requested theorem with three theorems:

Theorem 7.12 (Theorem XS). (1) $p \rightarrow (r \vee s)$, (2) $r \rightarrow q$, and (3) $s \rightarrow q$.

The propositions r, s we dream up are called the *cases*. There can be any number of cases. If we dream up three cases, then we would have four theorems to prove, and so on. The hope is that the proofs of these replacement theorems will be much easier than a proof of the original theorem.¹

The reason proof by cases is a valid proof technique is that

$$[(p \rightarrow (r \vee s)) \wedge (r \rightarrow q) \wedge (s \rightarrow q)] \rightarrow (p \rightarrow q)$$

is a tautology². Proof by cases, as for proof by contradiction, is generally a little trickier than direct and indirect proofs. In a proof by contradiction, we are not sure exactly what we are shooting for. We just hope some contradiction will pop up. For a proof by cases, we have to dream up the cases to use, and it can be difficult at times to dream up good cases.

Theorem 7.13. For any integer n , $|n| \geq n$.

Proof. Suppose n is an integer. There are two cases: Either (1): $n > 0$, or (2): $n \leq 0$.

Case 1: We need to show If $n > 0$, then $|n| \geq n$. (We will do this with a direct proof.) Suppose $n > 0$. Then $|n| = n$. Thus $|n| \geq n$ is true.

Case 2: We need to show If $n \leq 0$, then $|n| \geq n$. (We will again use a direct proof.) Suppose $n \leq 0$. Now $0 \leq |n|$. Thus, $n \leq |n|$.

So, in any case, $n \leq |n|$ is true, and that proves the theorem. ♣

¹ This is the *divide and conquer* approach to a proof.

² Prove this!

This has the form $p \rightarrow (r \vee s)$ of (1) in Theorem 7.4.

7.5 Existence proof

A proof of a statement of the form $\exists xP(x)$ is called an **existence proof**. The proof may be **constructive**, meaning that the proof provides a specific example of, or at least an explicit recipe for finding, an x so that $P(x)$ is true; or the proof may be **non-constructive**, meaning that it establishes the existence of x without giving a method of actually producing an example of an x for which $P(x)$ is true.

To give examples of each type of existence proof, let's use a familiar fact (which will be proved a little later in the course): There are infinitely many primes. Recall that a prime is an integer greater than 1 whose only positive divisors are 1 and itself. The next two theorems are contrived, but they demonstrate the ideas of constructive and nonconstructive proofs.

Theorem 7.14. *There is a prime with more than two digits.*

Proof. *Checking shows that 101 has no positive divisors besides 1 and itself. Also, 101 has more than two digits. So we have produced an example of a prime with more than two digits. ♣*

That is a constructive proof of the theorem. Now, here is a non-constructive proof of a similar theorem.

Theorem 7.15. *There is a prime with more than one billion digits.*

Proof. *Since there are infinitely many primes, they cannot all have one billion or fewer digits. So there must some primes with more than one billion digits. ♣*

7.6 Using a counterexample to disprove a statement

Finally, suppose we are asked to prove a theorem of the form $\forall x P(x)$, and for one reason or another we come to believe the proposition is not true. The proposition can be shown to be false by exhibiting a specific element from the domain of x for which $P(x)$ is false. Such an example is called a **counterexample** to the theorem. Let's look at a specific instance of the counterexample technique.

Theorem 7.16 (not really!). *For all positive integers n , $n^2 - n + 41$ is prime*

Counterexample. *To disprove the theorem, we explicitly specify a positive integer n such that $n^2 - n + 41$ is not prime. In fact, when $n = 41$, the expression is not a prime since clearly $41^2 - 41 + 41 = 41^2$ is divisible by 41. So, $n = 41$ is a counterexample to the proposition. ♣*

An interesting fact about this example is that $n = 41$ is the smallest counterexample. For $n = 1, 2, \dots, 40$, it turns out that $n^2 - n + 41$ is a prime! This examples shows the danger of checking a theorem of the form $\forall x P(x)$ for a few (or a few billion!) values of x , finding $P(x)$ true for those cases, and concluding it is true for every possible value of x .

7.7 Exercises

For the purpose of these exercises, feel free to use familiar facts and definitions about integers. For example: Recall, an integer n is even if $n = 2k$ for some integer k . And, an integer n is odd if $n = 2k + 1$ for some integer k .

Exercise 7.1. Give a direct proof that the sum of two even integers is even.

Exercise 7.2. Give an indirect proof that if the square of the integer n is odd, then n is odd.

Exercise 7.3. Give a proof by contradiction that the sum of a rational number and an irrational number is irrational.

Exercise 7.4. Give a proof by contradiction that if $5n - 1$ is odd, then n is even.

Exercise 7.5. Give a proof by cases that for integers m, n , we have $|mn| = |m||n|$. Hint: Consider four cases: (1) $m \geq 0$ and $n \geq 0$, (2) $m \geq 0$ and $n < 0$, (3) $m < 0$ and $n \geq 0$, and (4) $m < 0$ and $n < 0$.

Exercise 7.6. Give an example of a predicate $P(n)$ about positive integers n , such that $P(n)$ is true for every positive integer from 1 to one billion, but which is never-the-less not true for all positive integers. (Hint: there is a really simple choice possible for the predicate $P(n)$.)

Exercise 7.7. In Chapter 1, exercise e), you concluded that If $x = 2$, then $x^2 - 2x + 1 = 0$ is not a proposition. Using the convention given in this chapter, what would you say now, and why?

Exercise 7.8. Give a counterexample to the proposition Every positive integer that ends with a 7 is a prime.

8

Relations

TWO-PLACE PREDICATES, such as $B(x, y) : x \text{ is the brother of } y$, play a central role in mathematics. Such predicates can be used to describe many basic concepts. As examples, consider the predicates given verbally:

- (1) $G(x, y) : x \text{ is greater than or equal to } y$ which compares the magnitudes of two values.
- (2) $P(x, y) : x \text{ has the same parity as } y$ which compares the parity of two integers.
- (3) $S(x, y) : x \text{ has square equal to } y$ which relates a value to its square.

8.1 Relations

Two-place predicates are called **relations**, probably because of examples such as the *brother of* given above. To be a little more complete about it, if $P(x, y)$ is a two-place predicate, and the domain of discourse for x is the set A , and the domain of discourse for y is the set B , then P is called a **relation from A to B** . When working with relations, some new vocabulary is used. The set A (the domain of discourse for the first variable) is called the **domain** of the relation, and the set B (the domain of discourse for the second variable) is called the **codomain** of the relation.

8.2 Specifying a relation

There are several different ways to specify a relation. One way is to give a verbal description as in the examples above. As one more example of a verbal description of a relation, consider

$E(x, y)$: The word x ends with the letter y . Here the domain will be words in English, and the codomain will be the twenty-six letters of the alphabet. We say the ordered pair (cat, t) **satisfies** the relation E , but that (dog, w) does not.

8.2.1 By ordered pairs

When dealing with abstract relations, a verbal description is not always convenient. An alternate method is to tell what the domain and codomain are to be, and then simply list the ordered pairs which will satisfy the relation. For example, if $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ and $B = \{a, b, c, d\}$, then one of many possible relations from A to B would be $\{(1, b), (2, c), (4, c)\}$. If we name this relation R , we will write $R = \{(1, b), (2, c), (4, c)\}$. It would be tough to think of a natural verbal description of R .

When thinking of a relation, R , as a set of ordered pairs, it is common to write aRb in place of $(a, b) \in R$. For example, using the relation G defined above, we can convey the fact that the pair $(3, 2)$ satisfies the relation by writing any one of the following: (1) $G(3, 2)$ is true, (2) $(3, 2) \in G$, or (3) $3G2$. The third choice is the preferred one when discussing relations abstractly.

Sometimes the ordered pair representation of a relation can be a bit cumbersome compared to the verbal description. Think about the ordered pair form of the relation E given above: $E = \{(cat, t), (dog, g), (antidisestablishmentarianism, m), \dots\}$.

8.2.2 By graph

Another way represent a relation is with a **graph**¹. Here, a graph is a diagram made up of dots, called **vertices**, some of which are joined by lines, called **edges**. To draw a graph of a relation R from A to B , make a column of dots, one for each element of A , and label the dots

¹ Here graph does **not** mean the sorts of graphs of lines, curves and such discussed in an algebra course.

with the names of those elements. Then, to the right of A 's column make a column of dots for the elements of B . Then connect the vertex labelled $a \in A$ to a vertex $b \in B$ with an edge provided $(a, b) \in R$. The diagram is called the **bipartite graph representation** of R .

Example 8.1. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ and $B = \{a, b, c, d\}$, and let $R = \{(1, a), (2, b), (3, c), (3, d), (4, d)\}$. Then the bipartite graph which represents R is given in figure 8.1.

The choices made about the ordering and the placement of the vertices for the elements of A and B may make a difference in the appearance of the graph, but all such graphs are considered equivalent. Also, edges can be curved lines. All that matters is that such diagrams convey graphically the same information as R given as a set of ordered pairs.

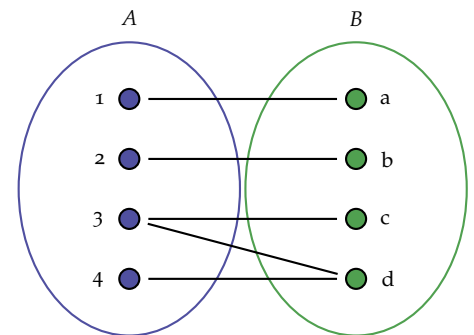


Figure 8.1: Example bipartite graph

8.2.3 By digraph: domain=codomain

It is common to have the domain and the codomain of a relation be the same set. If R is a relation from A to A , then we will say R is a **relation on A** . In this case there is a shorthand way of representing the relation by using a **digraph**. The word digraph is shorthand for *directed graph* meaning the edges have a direction indicated by an arrowhead. Each element of A is used to label a single point. An arrow connects the vertex labelled s to the one labelled t provided $(s, t) \in R$. An edge of the form (s, s) is called a **loop**.

Example 8.2. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$ and $R = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (2, 2), (2, 3), (3, 3), (3, 4), (4, 4)\}$. Then a digraph for R is shown in figure 8.2

Again it is true that a different placement of the vertices may yield a different-looking, but equivalent, digraph.

8.2.4 By 0-1 matrix

The last method for representing a relation is by using a 0-1 matrix. This method is particularly handy for encoding a relation in computer memory. An $m \times n$ **matrix** is a rectangular array with m rows

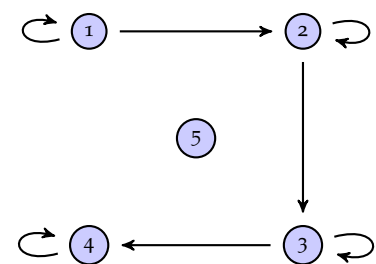


Figure 8.2: Example digraph

and n columns. Matrices are usually denoted by capital English letters. The entries of a matrix, usually denoted by lowercase English letters, are indexed by row and column. Either $a_{i,j}$ or a_{ij} stands for the entry in a matrix in the i th row and j th column. A **0-1 matrix** is one all of whose entries are 0 or 1. Given two finite sets A and B with m and n elements respectively, we may use the elements of A (in some fixed order) to index the rows of an $m \times n$ 0-1 matrix, and use the elements of B to index the columns. So for a relation R from A to B , there is a matrix of R , M_R with respect to the orderings of A and B which represents R . The entry of M_R in the row labelled by a and column labelled by b is 1 if aRb and 0 otherwise. This is exactly like using characteristic vectors to represent subsets of $A \times B$, except that the vectors are cut into n chunks of size m .

Example 8.3. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ and $B = \{a, b, c, d\}$ as before, and consider the relation $R = \{(1, a), (1, b), (2, c), (4, c), (4, a)\}$. Then a 0-1 matrix which represents R using the natural orderings of A and B is

$$M_R = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Note: This matrix may change appearance if A or B is listed in a different order.

8.3 Set operations with relations

Since relations can be thought of as sets of ordered pairs, it makes sense to ask if one relation is a subset of another. Also, set operations such as union and intersection can be carried out with relations.

8.3.1 Subset relation using matrices

These notions can be expressed in terms of the matrices that represent the relations. Bit-wise operations on 0-1 matrices are defined in the obvious way. Then $M_{R \cup S} = M_R \vee M_S$, and $M_{R \cap S} = M_R \wedge M_S$. Also, for two 0-1 matrices of the same size $M \leq N$ means that wherever N has a 0 entry, the corresponding entry in M is also 0. Then $R \subseteq S$ means the same as $M_R \leq M_S$.

8.4 Special relation operations

There are two new operations possible with relations.

8.4.1 Inverse of a relation

First, if R is a relation from A to B , then by reversing all the ordered pairs in R , we get a new relation, denoted R^{-1} , called the **inverse** of R . In other words, R^{-1} is the relation from B to A given by $R^{-1} = \{(b, a) | (a, b) \in R\}$. A bipartite graph for R^{-1} can be obtained from a bipartite graph for R simply by interchanging the two columns of vertices with their attached edges (or, by rotating the diagram 180°).

If the matrix for R is M_R , then the matrix for R^{-1} is produced by taking the columns of $M_{R^{-1}}$ to be the rows of M_R . A matrix obtained by changing the rows of M into columns is called the **transpose** of M , and written as M^T . So, in symbols, if M is a matrix for R , then M^T is a matrix for R^{-1} .

8.4.2 Composition of relations

The second operation with relations concerns the situation when S is a relation from A to B and R is a relation from B to C . In such a case, we can form the **composition of S by R** which is denoted $R \circ S$. The composition is defined as

$$R \circ S = \{(a, c) | a \in A, c \in C \text{ and } \exists b \in B, \text{ such that } (a, b) \in S \text{ and } (b, c) \in R\}.$$

Example 8.4. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$, $B = \{\alpha, \beta\}$ and $C = \{a, b, c\}$. Further let $S = \{(1, \alpha), (1, \beta), (2, \alpha), (3, \beta), (4, \alpha)\}$ and $R = \{(\alpha, a), (\alpha, c), (\beta, b)\}$.

Since $(1, \alpha) \in S$ and $(\alpha, a) \in R$, it follows that $(1, a) \in R \circ S$. Likewise, since $(2, \alpha) \in S$ and $(\alpha, c) \in R$, it follows that $(2, c) \in R \circ S$. Continuing in that fashion shows that

$$R \circ S = \{(1, a), (1, b), (1, c), (2, a), (2, c), (3, b), (4, a), (4, c)\}.$$

The composition can also be determined by looking at the bipartite graphs. Make a column of vertices for A labelled $1, 2, 3, 4$, then to the right a column of points for B labelled α, β , then again to the right a column of points for C labelled a, b, c . Draw in the edges as usual for R and S . Then a pair (x, y) will be in $R \circ S$ provided there is a two edge path from x to y . (See figure 8.3 at right.)

From the picture it is instantly clear that, for example, $(1, c) \in R \circ S$.

In terms of 0-1 matrices if M_S is the $m \times k$ matrix of S with respect to the given orderings of A and B , and if M_R is the $k \times n$ matrix of R with respect to the given orderings of B and C , then whenever the i, l entry of S and l, j entry of R are both 1, then $(a_i, c_j) \in R \circ S$.

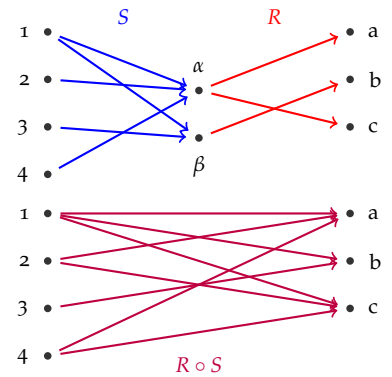


Figure 8.3: Composing relations: $R \circ S$

8.4.3 Composition with matrices: Boolean product

This example motivates the definition of the **Boolean product** of

M_S and M_R as the corresponding matrix $M_{R \circ S}$ of the composition.

More rigorously when M is an $m \times k$ 0-1 matrix and N is an $k \times n$ 0-1 matrix, $M \odot N$ is the $m \times n$ 0-1 matrix whose i, j entry is $(m_{i,1} \wedge n_{1,j}) \vee (m_{i,2} \wedge n_{2,j}) \vee \dots \vee (m_{i,k} \wedge n_{k,j})$. This looks worse than it is. It achieves the desired result².

For the relations in the example above example

$$M_{R \circ S} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \odot \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = M_S \odot M_R$$

² The boolean product is computed the same way as the ordinary matrix product where multiplication and addition have been replaced with and and or, respectively.

8.5 Exercises

Exercise 8.1. Let $A = \{a, b, c, d\}$ and $R = \{(a, a), (a, c), (b, b), (b, d), (c, a), (c, c), (d, b), (d, d)\}$ be a relation on A . Draw a digraph which represents R . Find the matrix which represents R with respect to the ordering d, c, a, b .

Exercise 8.2. The matrix of a relation S from $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$ to $\{a, b, c, d\}$ with respect to the given orderings is displayed below. Represent S as a bipartite graph, and as a set of ordered pairs.

$$M_S = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Exercise 8.3. Find the composition of S by R (as given in exercises 8.1 and 8.2) as a set of ordered pairs. Use the Boolean product to find $M_{R \circ S}$ with respect to the natural orderings.³

³ The natural ordering for R is not the ordering above.

Exercise 8.4. Let $B = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ and let

$$R_1 = \{(1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 5), (2, 1), (2, 2), (2, 4), (3, 3), (3, 4), \\ (4, 1), (4, 5), (5, 5), (6, 6)\} \text{ and}$$

$$R_2 = \{(1, 2), (1, 6), (2, 1), (2, 2), (2, 3), (2, 5), (3, 1), (3, 3), (3, 6), \\ (4, 2), (4, 3), (4, 4), (5, 1), (5, 5), (5, 6), (6, 2), (6, 3), (6, 6)\}.$$

(a) Find $R_1 \cup R_2$, $R_1 \cap R_2$, and $R_1 \oplus R_2$.

(b) With respect to the given ordering of B find the matrix of each relation in part a)

9

Properties of Relations

THERE ARE SEVERAL CONDITIONS that can be imposed on a relation R on a set A that make it useful. These requirements distinguish those relations which are interesting for some reason from the garden variety junk, which is, let's face it, what most relations are.

9.1 *Reflexive*

A relation R on A is **reflexive** provided $\forall a \in A, aRa$. In plain English, a relation is reflexive if every element of its domain is related to itself. The relation $B(x, y) : x \text{ is the brother of } y$ is not reflexive since no person is his own brother. On the other hand, the relation $S(m, n) : m + n \text{ is even}$. is a reflexive relation on the set of integers since, for any integer m , $m + m = 2m$ is even.

It is easy to spot a reflexive relation from its digraph: there is a loop at every vertex. Also, a reflexive relation can be spotted quickly from its matrix. First, let's agree that when the matrix of a relation on a set A is written down, the same ordering of the elements of A is used for both the row and column designators. For a reflexive relation, the entries on the **main diagonal** of its matrix will all be 1's. The main diagonal of a square matrix runs from the upper left corner to the lower right corner.

9.2 Irreflexive

The flip side of the coin from reflexive is irreflexive. A relation R on A is **irreflexive** in case $a \not R a$ for all $a \in A$. In other words, no element of A is related to itself. The *brother of* relation is irreflexive. The digraph of an irreflexive relation contains no loops, and its matrix has all 0's on the main diagonal.

Actually, that discussion was a little careless. To see why, consider the relation $S(x, y) : \text{the square of } x \text{ is bigger than or equal to } y$. Is this relation reflexive? The answer is: we can't tell. The answer depends on the domain of the relation, and we haven't been told what that is to be. For example, if the domain is the set \mathbb{N} of natural numbers, then the relation is reflexive, since $n^2 \geq n$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. However, if the domain is the set \mathbb{R} of all real numbers, the relation is not reflexive. In fact, a counterexample to the claim that S is reflexive on \mathbb{R} is the number $\frac{1}{2}$ since $\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{4}$, and $\frac{1}{4} < \frac{1}{2}$, so $\frac{1}{2} \not S \frac{1}{2}$. The lesson to be learned from this example is that the question of whether a relation is reflexive cannot be answered until the domain has been specified. The same is true for the irreflexive condition and the other conditions defined below. Always be sure you know the domain before trying to determine which properties a relation satisfies.

9.3 Symmetric

A relation R on A is **symmetric** provided $(a, b) \in R \rightarrow (b, a) \in R$. Another way to say the same thing: R is symmetric provided $R = R^{-1}$. In words, R is symmetric provided that whenever a is related to b , then b is related to a . Any digraph representing a symmetric relation R will have a return edge for every non-loop. Think of this as saying the graph has no one-way streets. The matrix M of a symmetric relation satisfies $M = M^T$. In this case M is symmetric about its main diagonal in the usual geometric sense of symmetry. The $B(x, y) : x \text{ is the brother of } y$ relation mentioned before is not symmetric if the domain is taken to be all people since, for example, $\text{Donny } B \text{ Marie}$, but $\text{Marie } \not B \text{ Donny}$. On the other hand, if we take the domain to be all (human) males, then B is symmetric.

9.4 Antisymmetric

A relation R on A is **antisymmetric** if whenever $(a, b) \in R$ and $(b, a) \in R$, then $a = b$. In other words, the only objects that are each related to the other are objects that are the same. For example, the usual \leq relation for the integers is antisymmetric since if $m \leq n$ and $n \leq m$, then $n = m$. A digraph representing an antisymmetric relation will have all streets one-way except loops. If M is a matrix for R , then whenever $a_{i,j} = 1$ and $i \neq j$, $a_{j,i} = 0$.

9.5 Transitive

A relation R on A is **transitive** if whenever $(a, b) \in R$ and $(b, c) \in R$, then $(a, c) \in R$. This can also be expressed by saying $R \circ R \subseteq R$. In a digraph for a transitive relation whenever we have a directed path of length two from a to c through b , we must also have a direct link from a to c . This means that any digraph of a transitive relation has lots of triangles. This includes degenerate triangles where a, b and c are not distinct. A matrix M of a transitive relation satisfies $M \odot M \leq M$. The relation \leq on \mathbb{N} is transitive, since from $k \leq m$ and $m \leq n$, we can conclude $k \leq n$.

9.6 Examples

Example 9.1.

Define a relation, N on the set of all living people by the rule $a N b$ if and only if a, b live within one mile of each other. This relation is reflexive since every person lives within a mile of himself. It is not irreflexive since I live within a mile of myself. It is symmetric since if a lives within a mile of b , then b lives within a mile of a . It is not antisymmetric since Mr. and Mrs. Smith live within a mile of each other, but they are not the same person. It is not transitive: to see why, think of the following situation (which surely exists somewhere in the world!): there is a straight road of length 1.5 miles. Say Al lives at one end of the road, Cal lives at the other end, and Sal lives half way between Al and Cal. Then $Al N Sal$ and $Sal N Cal$, but not $Al N Cal$.

Example 9.2. Let $A = \mathbb{R}$ and define aRb iff $a \leq b$, then R is a reflexive, transitive, antisymmetric relation. Because of this example, any relation on a set that is reflexive, antisymmetric, and transitive is called an **ordering** relation. The subset relation on any collection of sets is another ordering relation.

Example 9.3. Let $A = \mathbb{R}$ and define aRb iff $a < b$. Then R is irreflexive, and transitive.

Example 9.4. If $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ then

$$R = \{(1, 1), (2, 2), (3, 3), (4, 4), (5, 5), (6, 6), (1, 3), (3, 1), (1, 5), \\ (5, 1), (2, 4), (4, 2), (2, 6), (6, 2), (3, 5), (5, 3), (4, 6), (6, 4)\}$$

is reflexive, symmetric, and transitive. In artificial examples such as this one, it can be a tedious chore checking that the relation is transitive.

Example 9.5. If $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ and $R = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (2, 3), (1, 3), (3, 4), (2, 4), (4, 1)\}$ then R is not reflexive, not irreflexive, not symmetric, and not transitive but it is antisymmetric.

9.7 Exercises

Exercise 9.1. Define a relation on $\{1, 2, 3\}$ which is both symmetric and antisymmetric.

Exercise 9.2. Define a relation on $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ by

$$R = \{(1, 2), (2, 1), (2, 3), (3, 2), (3, 4), (4, 3)\}.$$

List every property of the five defined in this section which R satisfies.

Exercise 9.3. For each matrix of a relation R on $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ with respect to the given ordering below determine every property of the five defined in this section enjoyed by R .

$$(a) \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (b) \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$(c) \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (d) \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Exercise 9.4. Define the relation $C(A, B) : |A| \leq |B|$, where the domains for A and B are all subsets of \mathbb{Z} . Which properties does the relation S satisfy?

Exercise 9.5. Define the relation $M(A, B) : A \cap B \neq \emptyset$, where the domains for A and B are all subsets of \mathbb{Z} . Which properties does the relation M satisfy?

Exercise 9.6. Explain why \emptyset is a relation.

Exercise 9.7.

- (a) Let $A = \{1\}$, and consider the empty relation, \emptyset , on A . Which properties does \emptyset satisfy?
- (b) Same question as (a), but now with $A = \emptyset$.

Equivalence Relations

RELATIONS CAPTURE THE ESSENCE of many different mathematical concepts. In this chapter, we will show how to put the idea of *are the same kind* in terms of a special type of relation.

Before considering the formal concept of *same kind* let's look at a few simple examples. Consider the question, posed about an ordinary deck of 52 cards: *How many different kinds of cards are there?* One possible answer is: *There are 52 kinds of cards*, since all the cards are different. But another possible answer in certain circumstances is: *There are four kinds of cards* (namely clubs, diamonds, hearts, and spades). Another possible answer is: *There are two kinds of cards, red and black*. Still another answer is: *There are 13 kinds of cards: aces, twos, threes, . . . , jacks, queens, and kings*. Another answer, for the purpose of many card games is: *There are ten kinds of cards, aces, twos, threes, up to nines, while tens, jacks, queens, and kings are all considered to be the same value (usually called 10)*. You can certainly think of many other ways to split the deck into a number of different kinds.

Whenever the idea of *same kind* is used, some properties of the objects being considered are deemed important and others are ignored. For instance, when we think of the the deck of cards made of the 13 different ranks, ace through king, we are agreeing the the suit of the card is irrelevant. So the jack of hearts and the jack of clubs are taken to be the same for what ever purposes we have in mind.

10.1 Equivalence relation

The mathematical term for *same kind* is **equivalent**. There are three basic properties always associated with the idea of equivalence.

- (1) *Reflexive*: Every object is equivalent to itself.
- (2) *Symmetric*: If object a is equivalent to object b , then b is also equivalent to a .
- (3) *Transitive*: If a is equivalent to b and b is equivalent to c , then a is equivalent to c .

To put the idea of equivalence in the context of a relation, suppose we have a set A of objects, and a rule for deciding when two objects in A are the same kind (equivalent) for some purpose. Then we can define a relation E on the set A by the rule that the pair (s, t) of elements of A is in the relation E if and only if s and t are the same kind. For example, consider again the deck of cards, with two cards considered to be the same if they have the same rank. Then a few of the pairs in the relation E would be (ace hearts, ace spades), (three diamonds, three clubs), (three clubs, three diamonds), (three diamonds, three diamonds), (king diamonds, king clubs), and so on.

Using the terminology of the previous chapter, this relation E , and in fact any relation that corresponds to notion of equivalence, will be reflexive, symmetric, and transitive. For that reason, any reflexive, symmetric, transitive relation on a set A is called an **equivalence relation** on A .

10.2 Equivalence class of a relation

Suppose E is an equivalence relation on a set A and that x is one particular element of A . The **equivalence class of x** is the set of all the things in A that are equivalent to x . The symbol used for the equivalence class of x is $[x]$, so the definition can be written in symbols as $[x] = \{y \in A \mid y E x\}$.

For instance, think once more about the deck of cards with the equivalence relation *having the same rank*. The equivalence class of the

two of spades would be the set $[2♠] = \{2♣, 2♦, 2♥, 2♠\}$. That would also be the equivalence class of the two of diamonds. On the other hand, if the equivalence relation we are using for the deck is *having the same suit*, then the equivalence class of the two of spades would be

$$[2♠] = \{A♠, 2♠, 3♠, 4♠, 5♠, 6♠, 7♠, 8♠, 9♠, 10♠, J♠, Q♠, K♠\}.$$

The most important fact about the collection of different equivalence classes for an equivalence relation on a set A is that they split the set A into separate pieces. In fancier words, they **partition** the set A . For example, the equivalence relation of having the same rank splits a deck of cards into 13 different equivalence classes. In a sense, when using this equivalence relation, there are only 13 different objects, four of each kind.

10.3 Examples

Here are a few more examples of equivalence relations.

Example 10.1. Define R on \mathbb{N} by aRb iff $a = b$. In other words, equality is an equivalence relation. In fact, this example explains the choice of name for such relations.

Example 10.2. Let A be the set of logical propositions and define R on A by pRq iff $p \equiv q$.

Example 10.3. Let A be the set of people in the world and define R on A by aRb iff a and b are the same age in years.

Example 10.4. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ and R be the relation on A with the matrix from exercise 3. part a) of chapter 9.

Example 10.5. Define P on \mathbb{Z} by aPb iff a and b are both even, or both odd. We say a and b have the same parity.

For the equivalence relation *has the same rank* on a set of cards in a 52 card deck, there are 13 different equivalence classes. One of the classes contains all the aces, another contains all the 2's, and so on.

Example 10.6. For the equivalence relation from example 10.5, the equivalence class of 2 is the set of all even integers.

$$\begin{aligned} [2] &= \{n \mid 2 P n\} = \{n \mid 2 \text{ has the same parity as } n\} \\ &= \{n \mid n \text{ is even}\} = \{\dots, -4, -2, 0, 2, 4, \dots\} \end{aligned}$$

In this example, there are two different equivalence classes, the one comprising all the even integers, and the other comprising all the odd integers. As far as parity is concerned, -1232215 and 171717 are the same.

Suppose E is an equivalence relation on A . The most important fact about equivalence classes is that every element of A belongs to exactly one equivalence class. Let's prove that.

Theorem 10.7. Let E be an equivalence relation on a set A , and let $a \in A$. Then there is exactly one equivalence class to which a belongs.

Proof. Let E be an equivalence relation on a set A , and suppose $a \in A$. Since E is reflexive, $a E a$, and so $a \in [a]$ is true. That proves that a is in at least one equivalence class. To complete the proof, we need to show that if $a \in [b]$ then $[b] = [a]$.

Now, stop and think: Here is what we know:

- (1) E is an equivalence relation on A ,
- (2) $a \in [b]$, and
- (3) the definition of equivalence class.

Using those three pieces of information, we need to show the two sets $[a]$ and $[b]$ are equal. Now, to show two sets are equal, we show they have the same elements. In other words, we want to prove

- (1) If $c \in [a]$, then $c \in [b]$, and
- (2) If $c \in [b]$, then $c \in [a]$.

Let's give a direct proof of (2).

Suppose $c \in [b]$. Then, according to the definition of $[b]$, $c E b$. The goal is to end up with $c \in [a]$. Now, we know $a \in [b]$, and that means $a E b$. Since E is symmetric and $a E b$, it follows that $b E a$. Now we have $c E b$ and $b E a$. Since E is transitive, we can conclude $c E a$, which means $c \in [a]$ as we hoped to show. That proves (2). ♣

For homework, you will complete the proof of this theorem by doing part (1).

10.4 Partitions

Definition 10.8. A **partition** of a set A is a collection of nonempty, pairwise disjoint subsets of A , so that A is the union of the subsets in the collection. So for example $\{\{1, 2, 3\} \{4, 5, 6\}\}$ is a partition of $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$. The subsets forming a partition are called the **parts of the partition**.

So to express the meaning of theorem 10.7 above in different words: The different equivalence classes of an equivalence relation on a set partition the set into nonempty disjoint pieces. More briefly: the equivalence classes of E **partition** A .

10.5 Digraph of an equivalence relation

The fact that an equivalence relation partitions the underlying set is reflected in the digraph of an equivalence relation. If we pick an equivalence class $[a]$ of an equivalence relation E on a finite set A and we pick $b \in [a]$, then $b E c$ for all $c \in [a]$. This is true since $a E b$ implies $b E a$ and if $a E c$, then transitivity fills in $b E c$. So in any digraph for E every vertex of $[a]$ is connected to every other vertex in $[a]$ (including itself) by a directed edge. Also no vertex in $[a]$ is connected to any vertex in $A - [a]$. So the digraph of E consists of separate components, one for each distinct equivalence class, where each component contains every possible directed edge.

10.6 Matrix representation of an equivalence relation

In terms of a matrix representation of an equivalence relation E on a finite set A of size n , let the distinct equivalence classes have size k_1, k_2, \dots, k_r , where $k_1 + k_2 + \dots + k_r = n$. Next list the elements of A as $a_{1,1}, \dots, a_{k_1,1}, a_{1,2}, \dots, a_{k_2,2}, \dots, a_{1,r}, \dots, a_{k_r,r}$ where the i th equivalence class is $\{a_{1,i}, \dots, a_{k_i,i}\}$. Then the matrix for R with respect to this ordering is

of the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} J_{k_1} & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & J_{k_2} & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \dots & 0 & J_{k_{r-1}} & 0 \\ 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & J_{k_r} \end{bmatrix}$$

where J_m is the all 1's matrix of size $k_m \times k_m$. Conversely if the digraph of a relation can be drawn to take the above form, or if it has a matrix representation of the above form, then it is an equivalence relation and therefore reflexive, symmetric, and transitive.

10.7 Exercises

Exercise 10.1. Let A be the set of people alive on earth. For each relation defined below, determine if it is an equivalence relation on A . If it is, describe the equivalence classes. If it is not, determine which properties of an equivalence relation fail.

- (a) $a H b \iff a$ and b are the same height.
- (b) $a G b \iff a$ and b have a common grandparent.
- (c) $a L b \iff a$ and b have the same last name.
- (d) $a N b \iff a$ and b have a name (first name or last name) in common.
- (e) $a W b \iff a$ and b were born less than a day apart.

Exercise 10.2. Let E be an equivalence relation on a set A , and let $a, b \in A$. Prove that either $[a] = [b]$ or else $[a] \cap [b] = \emptyset$.

Exercise 10.3. Consider the relation $B(x, y) : x$ is the brother of y on the set, M , of living human males. Is this an equivalence relation on M ?

Exercise 10.4. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8\}$. Form a partition of A using $\{1, 2, 4\}$, $\{3, 5, 7\}$, and $\{6, 8\}$. These are the equivalence classes for an equivalence relation, E , on A .

- (a) Draw a digraph of E .
- (b) Determine a 0-1 matrix of E .

Exercise 10.5. Determine if each matrix represents an equivalence relation on $\{a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h\}$. If the matrix represents an equivalence relation find the equivalence classes.

$$(a) \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$(b) \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Exercise 10.6. Complete the proof of theorem 10.7 on page 96 by proving part (1).

Functions and Their Properties

IN ALGEBRA, FUNCTIONS ARE thought of as formulas such as $f(x) = x^2$ where x is any real number. This formula gives a rule that describes how to determine one number if we are handed some number x . So, for example, if we are handed $x = 2$, the function f says that determines the value 4, and if we are handed 0, f says that determines 0. There is one condition that, by mutual agreement, such a function rule must obey to earn the title function: the rule must always determine *exactly one value* for each (reasonable) value it is handed. Of course, for the example above, $x = \text{blue}$ isn't a reasonable choice for x , so f doesn't determine a value associated with *blue*. The **domain** of this function is all real numbers.

Instead of thinking of a function as a formula, we could think of a function as any rule which determines exactly one value for every element of a set A . For example, suppose W is the set of all words in English, and consider the rule, I , which associates with each word, w , the first letter of w . Then $I(\text{cat}) = c$, $I(\text{dog}) = d$, $I(a) = a$, and so on. Notice that for each word w , I always determines exactly one value, so it meets the requirement of a function mentioned above. Notice that for the same set of all English words, the rule $T(w)$ is *the third letter of the word w* is not a function since, for example, $T(\text{be})$ has no value.

11.1 Definition of function

Here is the semi-formal definition of a function: A **function** from the set A to the set B is any rule which describes how to determine exactly one element of B for each element of A . The set A is called the **domain** of f , and the set B is called the **codomain** of f . The notation $f : A \rightarrow B$ means f is a function from A to B .

There are cases where it is not convenient to describe a function with words or formulas. In such cases, it is often possible to simply make a table listing the members of the domain along with the associated member of the codomain.

Example 11.1. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$, $B = \{a, b, c, d, e\}$ and let $f : A \rightarrow B$ be specified by table 11.1

It is hard to imagine a verbal description that would act like f , but the table says it all. It is traditional to write such tables in a more compact form as

$$f = \{ (1, a), (2, a), (3, c), (4, b), (5, d), (6, e) \}.$$

The last result in example 11.1 looks like a relation, and that leads to the modern definition of a function:

Definition 11.2. A function, f , with domain A and codomain B is a relation from A to B (hence $f \subseteq A \times B$) such that each element of A is the first coordinate of exactly one ordered pair in f .

That completes the evolution of the concept of function from formula, through rule, to set of ordered pairs. When dealing with functions, it is traditional to write $b = f(a)$ instead of $(a, b) \in f$.

11.2 Functions with discrete domain and codomain

In algebra and calculus, the functions of interest have a domain and a codomain consisting of sets of real numbers, $A, B \subseteq \mathbb{R}$. The *graph* of f is the set of ordered pairs in the Cartesian plane of the form $(x, f(x))$. Normally in this case, the output of the function f is determined by some formula. For example, $f(x) = x^2$.

We can spot a function in this case by the **vertical line test**. A relation from a subset A of \mathbb{R} to another subset of \mathbb{R} is a function if

x	$f(x)$
1	a
2	a
3	c
4	b
5	d
6	e

Table 11.1: A simple function

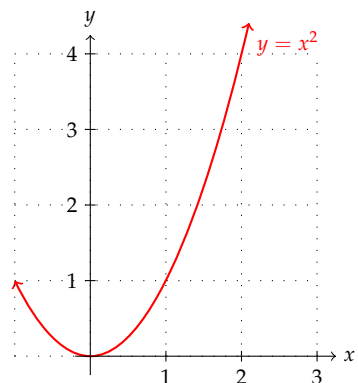


Figure 11.1: Graph of $y = x^2$

every vertical line of the form $x = a$, where $a \in A$ intersects the graph of f exactly once.

In discrete mathematics, most functions of interest have a domain and codomain some finite sets, or, perhaps a domain or codomain consisting of integers. Such domains and codomains are said to be **discrete**.

11.2.1 Representations by 0-1 matrix or bipartite graph

When $f : A \rightarrow B$ is a function and both A and B are finite, then since f is a relation, we can represent f either as a 0 – 1 matrix or a bipartite graph. If M is a 0 – 1 matrix which represents a function, then since every element of A occurs as the first entry in exactly one ordered pair in f , it must be that every row of M has exactly one 1 in it. So it is easy to distinguish which relations are functions, and which are not from the matrix for the relation. This is the discrete analog of the vertical line test, (but notice that rows are horizontal).

Example 11.3. Again, let's consider the function defined, as in example 11.1, by f is from $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ to $B = \{a, b, c, d, e\}$ given by the relation $f = \{(1, a), (2, a), (3, c), (4, b), (5, d), (6, e)\}$.

If we take the given orderings of A and B , then the 0-1 matrix representing the function f appears in figure 11.2.

Notice that in matrix form the number of 1's in a column coincides with the number of occurrences of the column label as output of the function. So the sum of all entries in a given column equals the number of times the element labeling that column is an output of the function.

When a function from A to B is represented as a bipartite graph, every vertex of A is connected to exactly one element of B .

11.3 Special properties

In the case of a function whose domain is a subset of \mathbb{R} , the number of times that the horizontal line $y = b$ intersects the graph of f , is the number of inputs from A for which the function value is b . Notice that these criteria are twisted again. In the finite case we are now considering vertical information, and in the other case we are

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Figure 11.2: A function in 0-1 matrix form

considering horizontal information. In either case, these criteria will help us determine which of several special properties a function either has or lacks.

11.3.1 One-to-one (injective)

We say that a function $f : A \rightarrow B$ is **one-to-one** provided $f(s) = f(t)$ implies $s = t$. The two dollar word for one-to-one is **injective**. The definition can also be expressed in the contrapositive as: f is one-to-one provided $s \neq t$ implies $f(s) \neq f(t)$. But the definition is even easier to understand in words: a function is one-to-one provided different inputs always result in different outputs. As an example, consider the function $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by the formula $f(x) = x^2$. This function is not one-to-one since both inputs 2 and -2 are associated with the same output: $f(2) = 2^2 = 4$ and $f(-2) = (-2)^2 = 4$.

Example 11.4. *Proving a function is one-to-one can be a chore. Let $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be given by $f(x) = x^3 - 2$. Let's prove f is one-to-one.*

Proof. *Suppose $f(s) = f(t)$, then $s^3 - 2 = t^3 - 2$. Thus $s^3 = t^3$. So $s^3 - t^3 = 0$. Now $s^3 - t^3 = (s - t)(s^2 + st + t^2) = 0$ implies $s - t = 0$ or $s^2 + st + t^2 = 0$. The first case leads to $s = t$. Using the quadratic formula, the second case leads to $s = -t \pm \frac{\sqrt{t^2 - 4t^2}}{2}$. Since s has to be a real number, the expression under the radical cannot be negative. The only other option is that it is 0, and that means $t = 0$. Of course if $t = 0$ this leads to $s = 0 = t$. So, in any case, $s = t$. ♣*

The one-to-one property is very easy to spot from either the matrix or the bipartite graph of a function. When $f : A \rightarrow B$ is one-to-one, and $|A| = m$ and $|B| = n$ for some $m, n \in \mathbb{N} - \{0\}$, then when f is represented by a 0-1 matrix M , there can be no more than one 1 in any column. So the column sums of any 0-1 matrix representing a one-to-one function are all less than or equal to 1. Since every row sum of M is 1 and there are m rows, we must have $m \leq n$. The bipartite graph of a one-to-one function can be recognized by the feature that no vertex of the codomain has more than one edge leading to it.

11.3.2 Onto (surjective)

We say that a function $f : A \rightarrow B$ is **onto**, or **surjective**, if every element of B equals $f(a)$ for some $a \in A$. Consequently any matrix representing an onto function has each column sum at least one, and thus $m \geq n$. In terms of bipartite graphs, for an onto function, every element of the codomain has at least one edge leading to it.

As an example, consider again the function L from all English words to the set of letters of the alphabet defined by the rule $L(w)$ is the last letter of the word w . This function is not one-to-one since, for example, $L(\text{cat}) = L(\text{mutt})$, so two different members of the domain of L are associated with the same member (namely t) of the codomain. However, L is onto. We could prove that by making a list of twenty-six words, one ending with a , one ending with b , \dots , one ending with z . (Only the letters j and q might take more than a moment's thought.)

11.3.3 Bijective

A function $f : A \rightarrow B$ which is both one-to-one and onto is called **bijective**. In the matrix of a bijection, every column has exactly one 1 and every row has exactly one 1. So the number of rows must equal the number of columns. In other words, if there is a bijection $f : A \rightarrow B$, where A is a finite set, then A and B have the same number of elements. In such a case we will say the sets have the same **cardinality** or that they are **equinumerous**, and write that as $|A| = |B|$. The general definition (whether A and B are finite or not) is:

Definition 11.5. A and B are *equinumerous* provided there exists a bijection from A to B .

Notice that for finite sets with the same number of elements, A, B , any one-to-one function must be onto and vice versa. This is not true for infinite sets. For example the function $f : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ by $f(m) = 2m$ is one-to-one, but not onto, since $f(n) = 1$ is impossible for any n . On the other hand, the function $g : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ given by the rule $g(n)$ is the smallest integer that is greater than or equal to $\frac{n}{2}$ is onto, but not

one-to-one. As examples, $g(6) = 3$ and $g(-5) = -2$. This function is onto since clearly $g(2n) = n$ for any integer n , so every element of the codomain has at least one edge leading to it. But $g(1) = g(2) = 1$, so g is not one-to-one.

11.4 Composition of functions

Since functions are relations, the **composition** of a function $g : A \rightarrow B$ by a function $f : B \rightarrow C$, makes sense. As usual, this is written as $f \circ g : A \rightarrow C$, but that's a little presumptive since it seems to assume that $f \circ g$ really is a function.

Theorem 11.6. *If $g : A \rightarrow B$ and $f : B \rightarrow C$, then $f \circ g$ is a function.*

Proof. *We need to show that for each $a \in A$ there is exactly one $c \in C$ such that $(a, c) \in f \circ g$. So suppose $a \in A$. since $g : A \rightarrow B$, there is some $b \in B$ with $(a, b) \in g$. Since $f : B \rightarrow C$, there is a $c \in C$ such that $(b, c) \in f$. So, by the definition of composition, $(a, c) \in f \circ g$. That proves there is at least one $c \in C$ with $(a, c) \in f \circ g$. To complete the proof, we need to show that there is only one element of C that $f \circ g$ pairs up with a . So, suppose that (a, c) and (a, d) are both in $f \circ g$. We need to show $c = d$. Since (a, c) and (a, d) are both in $f \circ g$, there must be elements $s, t \in B$ such that $(a, s) \in g$ and $(s, c) \in f$, and also $(a, t) \in g$ and $(t, d) \in f$. Now, since g is a function, and both (a, s) and (a, t) are in g , we can conclude $s = t$. So when we write $(t, d) \in f$, we might as well write $(s, d) \in f$. So we know (s, c) and (s, d) are both in f . As f is a function, we can conclude $c = d$. ♣*

If $g : A \rightarrow B$ and $f : B \rightarrow C$, and $(a, b) \in g$ and $(b, c) \in f$, then $(a, c) \in f \circ g$. Another way to write that is $g(a) = b$ and $f(b) = c$. So $c = f(b) = f(g(a))$. That last expression look like the familiar formula for the composition of functions found in algebra texts:
 $(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x))$.

11.5 Invertible discrete functions

When $f : A \rightarrow B$ is a function, we can form the relation f^{-1} from B to A . But f^{-1} might not be a function. For example, suppose $f :$

$\{a, b\} \rightarrow \{1, 2\}$ is $f = \{(a, 1), (b, 1)\}$. Then $f^{-1} = \{(1, a), (1, b)\}$, definitely not a function.

If in fact f^{-1} is a function, then for all $a \in A$ with $b = f(a)$, we have $f^{-1}(b) = a$ so $(f^{-1} \circ f)(a) = f^{-1}(f(a)) = f^{-1}(b) = a, \forall a \in A$. Similarly $(f \circ f^{-1})(b) = b, \forall b \in B$. In this case we say f is **invertible**.

Another way to say the same thing: the inverse of a function $f : A \rightarrow B$ is a function $g : B \rightarrow A$ which undoes the operation of f . As a particular example, consider the function $f : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ given by the formula $f(n) = n + 3$. In words, f is the **add 3** function. The operation which undoes the effect of f is clearly the **subtract 3** function. That is, $f^{-1}(n) = n - 3$.


For any set, S , define $1_S : S \rightarrow S$ by $1_S(x) = x$ for every $x \in S$. In other words, $1_S = \{(x, x) \mid x \in S\}$. The function 1_S is called the **identity function on S** . So the computations above show $f^{-1} \circ f = 1_A$ and $f \circ f^{-1} = 1_B$.

Theorem 11.7. *A function $f : A \rightarrow B$ is invertible iff f is bijective.*

Proof. First suppose that $f : A \rightarrow B$ is invertible. Then $f^{-1} : B \rightarrow A$ exists. If $f(a_1) = f(a_2)$, then since f^{-1} is a function, $a_1 = f^{-1}(f(a_1)) = f^{-1}(f(a_2)) = a_2$. Thus f is one-to-one. Also if $b \in B$ with $f^{-1}(b) = a$, then $f(a) = f(f^{-1}(b)) = b$. So f is onto. Since f is one-to-one and onto, f is bijective.

Now suppose that f is bijective, and let $b \in B$. Since f is onto, we have some $a \in A$ with $f(a) = b$. If $e \in A$ with $f(e) = b$, then $e = a$ since f is one-to-one. Thus b is the first entry in exactly one ordered pair in the inverse relation f^{-1} . Whence, f^{-1} is a function. ♣

Do not make the error¹ of confusing inverses and reciprocals when dealing with functions. The **reciprocal** of $f : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ given by the formula $f(n) = n + 3$ is $\frac{1}{f(n)} = \frac{1}{n + 3}$ which is not the inverse function for f . For example $f(0) = 3$, but the reciprocal of f does not convert 3 back into 0, instead the reciprocal associates $\frac{1}{6}$ with 3. In fact, there are other problems with the reciprocal: it doesn't even make sense when $n = -3$ since that would give a division by 0, which is undefined. So, be very careful when working with functions not to confuse the words reciprocal and inverse.

¹  (Danger ahead!) They are entirely different things.

11.6 Characteristic functions

The characteristic vector (see section 6.10) of a set may be used to define a special 0-1 function representing the given set.

Example 11.8. *Let \mathcal{U} be a finite universal set with n elements ordered u_1, \dots, u_n . Let B_n denote all binary strings of length n . The characteristic function $\chi : \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{U}) \rightarrow B_n$, which takes a subset A to its characteristic vector is bijective. Thus there is no danger of miscomputation. We can either manipulate subsets of \mathcal{U} using set operations and then represent the result as a binary vector or we can represent the subsets as binary vectors and manipulate the vectors with appropriate bit string operations. We'll get exactly the same answer either way.*

The process in example 11.8 allows us therefore to translate any set theory problem with finite sets into the world of 0's and 1's. This is the essence of computer science.

11.7 Exercises

Exercise 11.1. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$. In each case, give an example of a function $f : A \rightarrow A$ with the indicated properties, or explain why no such function exists.

- (a) f is bijective, but not 1_A .
- (b) f is neither one-to-one nor onto.
- (c) f is one-to-one, but not onto.
- (d) f is onto, but not one-to-one.

Exercise 11.2. Repeat exercise 11.1, with the set $A = \mathbb{N}$.

Exercise 11.3. Prove or give a counterexample:

If E is an equivalence relations on a set A , then $E \circ E$ is an equivalence relation on A .

Exercise 11.4. Suppose $g : A \rightarrow B$ and $f : B \rightarrow C$ are both one-to-one. Prove $f \circ g$ is one-to-one.

12

Special Functions

CERTAIN FUNCTIONS arise frequently in discrete mathematics. Here is a catalog of some important ones.

12.1 Floor and ceiling functions

To begin with, the **floor function** is a function from \mathbb{R} to \mathbb{Z} which assigns to each real number x , the largest integer which is less than or equal to x . We denote the floor function by $\lfloor x \rfloor$. So $\lfloor x \rfloor = n$ means $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $n \leq x < n + 1$. For example, $\lfloor 4.2 \rfloor = 4$, and $\lfloor 7 \rfloor = 7$. Notice that for any integer n , $\lfloor n \rfloor = n$. Be a little careful with negatives: $\lfloor \pi \rfloor = 3$, but $\lfloor -\pi \rfloor = -4$. A dual function is denoted $\lceil x \rceil$, where $\lceil x \rceil = n$ means $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $n \geq x > n - 1$. This is the **ceiling function**. For example, $\lceil 4.2 \rceil = 5$ and $\lceil -4.2 \rceil = -4$.

The graph (in the college algebra sense!) of the floor function appears in figure 12.1.

12.2 Fractional part

The **fractional part**¹ of a number $x \geq 0$ is denoted $\text{frac}(x)$ and equals $x - \lfloor x \rfloor$. For numbers $x \geq 0$, the fractional part of x is just what would be expected: the stuff following the decimal point. For example, $\text{frac}(5.2) = 5.2 - \lfloor 5.2 \rfloor = 5.2 - 5 = 0.2$. When x is negative

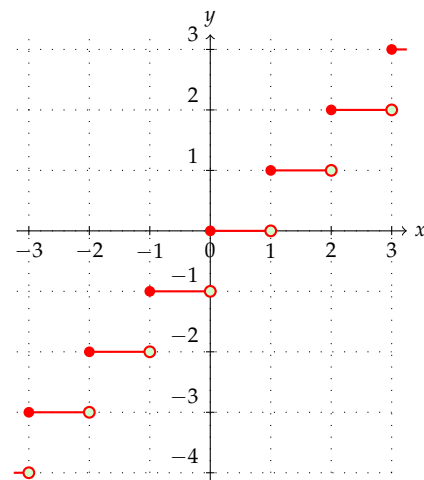


Figure 12.1: Floor function

¹ This is the Mathematica and Wolfram/Alpha definition. Often, the Graham definition is used:

$$\text{frac}(x) = x - \lfloor x \rfloor, \text{ for all } x.$$

its fractional part is defined to be $\text{frac}(x) = x - \lceil x \rceil$. Hence, we have

$$\text{frac}(x) = \begin{cases} x - \lceil x \rceil, & x \geq 0, \\ x - \lceil x \rceil, & x < 0. \end{cases}$$

For example, $\text{frac}(-5.2) = -5.2 - \lceil -5.2 \rceil = -5.2 - (-5) = -0.2$. In plain English, to determine the fractional part of a number x , take the stuff after the decimal point and keep the sign of the number. The graph of the fractional part function is shown in figure 12.2.

12.3 Integral part

For any real number x its **integral part** is defined to be $x - \text{frac}(x)$.

The integral part can equivalently be defined by

$$\lceil x \rceil = \begin{cases} \lfloor x \rfloor, & x \geq 0, \\ \lfloor x \rfloor, & x < 0. \end{cases}$$

The integral part of x is denoted by $\lceil x \rceil$, or, sometimes, by $\text{int}(x)$.

In words, the integral part of x is found by discarding everything following the decimal (at least if we agree not to end decimals with an infinite string of 9's such as $2.9999\dots$). The graph of the integral part function is displayed in figure 12.3.

12.4 Power functions

The **power functions** are familiar from college algebra. They are functions of the form $f(x) = x^2$, $f(x) = x^3$, $f(x) = x^4$, and so on. By extension, $f(x) = x^a$, where a is any constant greater than or equal to 1 will be called a power function.

For any set X , the unit power function $1_X(x) = x$ for all $x \in X$ is called the **identity** function.

12.5 Exponential functions

Exchanging the roles of the variable and the constant in the power functions leads to a whole class of interesting functions, those of

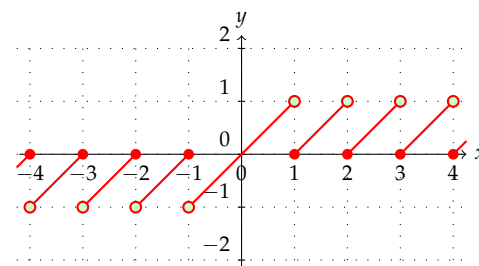


Figure 12.2: Fractional part function

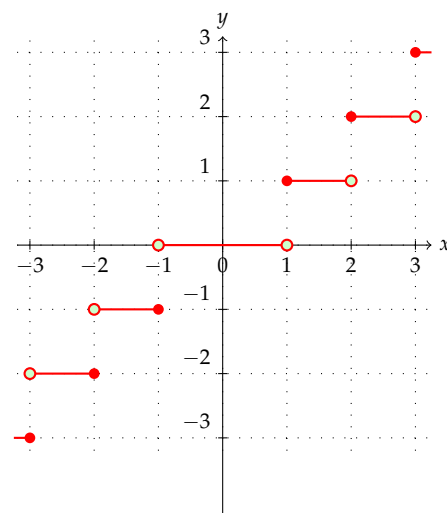


Figure 12.3: Integral part function

the form $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, where $f(x) = a^x$, and $0 < a$. Such a function f is called the **base a exponential function**. The function is not very interesting when $a = 1$. Also if $0 < b < 1$, then the function $g(x) = b^x = \frac{1}{f(x)}$, where $f(x) = a^x$, and $a = \frac{1}{b} > 1$. So we may focus on $a > 1$. In fact the most important values for a are 2, e and 10. The number $e \approx 2.718281828459\dots$ is called the **natural base**, but that story belongs to calculus. Base 2 is the usual base for computer science. Engineers are most interested in base 10, while mathematicians often use the natural exponential function, e^x .

12.6 Logarithmic functions

By graphing the function $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow (0, \infty)$ defined by $y = f(x) = e^x$ we can see that it is bijective. We denote the inverse function $f^{-1}(x)$ by $\ln x$ and call it the **natural log function**. Since these are inverse functions we have

$$e^{\ln a} = a, \forall a > 0 \text{ and } \ln(e^b) = b, \forall b \in \mathbb{R}.$$

As a consequence $a^x = (e^{\ln a})^x = e^{(\ln a) \cdot x} = e^{x \ln a}$ is determined as the composition of $y = (\ln a)x$ by the natural exponential function. So every exponential function is invertible with inverse denoted as $\log_a x$, the **base a logarithmic function**. Besides the natural log, $\ln x$, we often write $\lg x$ for the base 2 logarithmic function, and $\log x$ with no subscript to denote the base 10 logarithmic function.

12.7 Laws of logarithms

The basic facts needed for manipulating exponential and logarithmic functions are the laws of exponents.

Theorem 12.1 (Laws of Exponents). For $a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}$, $a^{b+c} = a^b \cdot a^c$, $a^{bc} = (a^b)^c$ and $a^c b^c = (ab)^c$.

From the laws of exponents, we can derive the

Theorem 12.2 (Laws of Logarithms). For $a, b, c > 0$, $\log_a bc = \log_a b + \log_a c$, and $\log_a (b^c) = c \log_a b$.

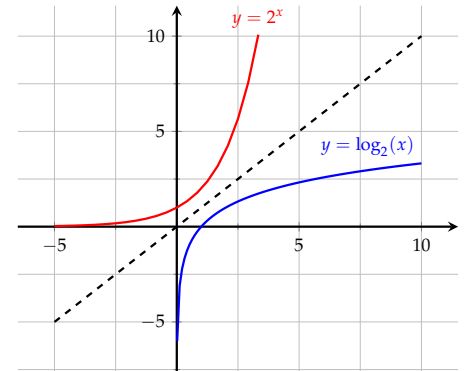


Figure 12.4: 2^x and $\log_2(x)$ functions

Proof. We rely on the fact that all exponential and logarithmic functions are one-to-one. Hence, we have that

$$a^{\log_a bc} = bc = a^{\log_a b} a^{\log_a c} = a^{\log_a b + \log_a c},$$

implies

$$\log_a bc = \log_a b + \log_a c.$$

Similarly, the second identity follows from

$$a^{\log_a b^c} = b^c = (a^{\log_a b})^c = a^{c \log_a b}.$$



Notice that $\log_a \frac{1}{b} = \log_a b^{-1} = -\log_a b$.

Calculators typically have buttons for logs base e and base 10. If $\log_a b$ is needed for a base different from e and 10, it can be computed in a roundabout way. Suppose we need to find $c = \log_a b$. In other words, we need the number c such that $a^c = b$. Taking the \ln of both sides of that equation we get

$$\begin{aligned} a^c &= b \\ \ln(a^c) &= \ln b \\ c \ln a &= \ln b \\ c &= \frac{\ln b}{\ln a} \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have the general relation between logarithms as follows.

Corollary 12.3. So, we have $\log_a(x) = \frac{\ln x}{\ln a}$.

Example 12.4. For example, we see that $\log_2 100 = \frac{\ln 100}{\ln 2} \approx 6.643856$.

12.8 Exercises

Exercise 12.1. In words, $\lfloor x \rfloor$ is the largest integer less than or equal to x . **Complete the sentence:** In words, $\lceil x \rceil$ is the smallest Draw a (college algebra) graph of $f(x) = \lceil x \rceil$.

Exercise 12.2. Draw a (college algebra) graph of $f(x) = \lfloor 2x - 1 \rfloor$.

Exercise 12.3. Draw a (college algebra) graph of $f(x) = 2\lfloor x - 1 \rfloor$.

Exercise 12.4. Let $f(x) = 18x$ and let $g(x) = \frac{x^3}{2}$. Sketch the graphs of f and g for $x \geq 1$ on the same set of axes. Notice that the graph g is lower than the graph of f when $x = 1$, but it is above the graph of f when $x = 9$. Where does g cross the graph of f (in other words, where does g catch up with f)?

Exercise 12.5. Let $f(x) = 4x^5$ and let $g(x) = 2^x$. For values of $x \geq 1$ it appears that the graph of g is lower than the graph of f . Does g ever catch up with f , or does f always stay ahead of g ?

Exercise 12.6. The x^y button on your calculator is broken. Show how can you approximate $2\sqrt{2}$ with your calculator anyhow.

Sequences and Summation

A **sequence** IS A LIST of numbers in a specific order. For example, the positive integers $1, 2, 3, \dots$ is a sequence, as is the list $4, 3, 3, 5, 4, 4, 3, 5, 5, 4$ of the number of letters in the English words of the ten digits in order *zero, one, \dots, nine*. Actually, the first is an example of an infinite sequence, the second is a finite sequence. The first sequence goes on forever; there is no last number. The second sequence eventually comes to a stop. In fact the second sequence has only ten items. A **term** of a sequence is one of the numbers that appears in the sequence. The first term is the first number in the list, the second term is the second number in the list, and so on.

13.1 Specifying sequences

A more general way to think of a sequence is as a function from some subset of \mathbb{Z} having a least member (in most cases either $\{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ or $\{1, 2, \dots\}$) with codomain some *arbitrary* set. In most mathematics courses the codomain will be a set of numbers, but that isn't necessary. For example, consider the finite sequence of initial letters of the words in the previous paragraph: $a, s, i, a, l, o, n, \dots, a, s, o$. If the letter L is used to denote the function that forms this sequence, then $L(1) = a$, $L(2) = s$, and so on.

Computer science texts use the former and elementary math application texts use the later. Mathematicians use any such well-ordered domain set.

13.1.1 Defining a Sequence With a Formula

The examples of sequences given so far were described in words, but there are other ways to tell what objects appear in the sequence. One way is with a formula. For example, let $s(n) = n^2$, for $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$. As the values 1, 2, 3 and so on are plugged into $s(n)$ in succession, the infinite sequence 1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36, \dots is built up. It is traditional to write s_n (or t_n , etc) instead of $s(n)$ when describing the terms of a sequence, so the formula above would usually be seen as $s_n = n^2$. Read that as *s sub n equals n squared*. When written this way, the n in the s_n is called a *subscript* or *index*. The subscript of s_{173} is 173.

Example 13.1. What is the 50th term of the sequence defined by the formula $s_j = \frac{j+1}{j+2}$, where $j = 1, 2, 3, \dots$? We see that

$$s_{50} = \frac{51}{52}.$$

Example 13.2. What is the 50th term of the sequence defined by the formula $t_k = \frac{k+1}{k+2}$, where $k = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$? Since the indicies start at 0, the 50th term will be t_{49} :

$$t_{49} = \frac{50}{51}.$$

13.1.2 Defining a Sequence by Suggestion

A sequence can also be specified by listing an initial portion of the sequence, and trust the reader to successfully perform the mind reading trick of guessing how the sequence is to continue based on the pattern suggested by those initial terms. For example, consider the sequence 7, 10, 13, 16, 19, 22, \dots . The symbol \dots means *and so on*. In other words, you *should* be able to figure out the way the sequence will continue. This method of specifying a sequence is dangerous of course. For instance, the number of terms sufficient for one person to spot the pattern might not be enough for another person. Also, maybe there are several different *obvious* ways to continue the pattern

Example 13.3. What is the next term in the sequence 1, 3, 5, 7 \dots ? One possible answer is 9, since it looks like we are listing the positive odd integers in increasing order. But another possible answer is 8: maybe we are

listing each positive integer with an e in its name. You can probably think of other ways to continue the sequence.

In fact, for any finite list of initial terms, there are always infinitely many more or less natural ways to continue the sequence. A reason can always be provided for absolutely any number to be the next in the sequence. However, there will typically be only one or two *obvious* simple choices for continuing a sequence after five or six terms.

13.2 Arithmetic sequences

The simple pattern suggested by the initial terms $7, 10, 13, 16, 19, 22, \dots$ is that the sequence begins with a 7 , and each term is produced by adding 3 to the previous term. This is an important type of sequence. The general form is $s_1 = a$ (a is just some specific number), and, from the second term on, each new term is produced by adding d to the previous term (where d is some fixed number). In the last example, $a = 7$ and $d = 3$. A sequence of this form is called an **arithmetic sequence**. The number d is called the **common difference**, which makes sense since d is the difference of any two consecutive terms of the sequence. It is possible to write down a formula for s_n in this case. After all, to compute s_n we start with the number a , and begin adding d 's to it. Adding one d gives $s_2 = a + d$, adding two d 's gives $s_3 = a + 2d$, and so on. For s_n we will add $n - 1$ d 's to the a , and so we see $s_n = a + (n - 1)d$. In the numerical example above, the 5^{th} term of the sequence ought to be $s_5 = 7 + 4 \cdot 3 = 19$, and sure enough it is. The 407^{th} term of the sequence is $s_{407} = 7 + 406 \cdot 3 = 1225$.

Example 13.4. The 1^{st} term of an arithmetic sequence is 11 and the 8^{th} term is 81 . What is a formula for the n^{th} term?

We know $a_1 = 11$ and $a_8 = 81$. Since $a_8 = a_1 + 7d$, where d is the common difference, we get the equation $81 = 11 + 7d$. So $d = 10$. We can now write down a formula for the terms of this sequence: $a_n = 11 + (n - 1)10 = 1 + 10n$. Checking, we see this formula does give the required values for a_1 and a_8 .

13.3 Geometric sequences

For an arithmetic sequence we added the same quantity to get from one term of the sequence to the next. If instead of adding we multiply each term by the same thing to produce the next term the result is called a **geometric sequence**.

Example 13.5. Let $s_1 = 2$, and suppose we multiply by 3 to get from one term to the next. The sequence we build now looks like $2, 6, 18, 54, 162, \dots$, each term being 3 times as large as the previous term.

In general, if $s_1 = a$, and, for $n \geq 1$, each new term is r times the preceding term, then the formula for the n^{th} term of the sequence is $s_n = ar^{n-1}$, which is reasoned out just as for the formula for the arithmetic sequence above. The quantity r in the geometric sequence is called the **common ratio** since it is the ratio of any term in the sequence to its predecessor (assuming $r \neq 0$ at any rate).

13.4 Summation notation

A sequence of numbers is an ordered list of numbers. A **summation** (or just **sum**) is a sequence of numbers added up. A sum with n terms (that is, with n numbers added up) will be denoted by S_n typically. Thus if we were dealing with sequence $1, 3, 5, 7, \dots, 2n - 1, \dots$, then $S_3 = 1 + 3 + 5$, and $S_n = 1 + 3 + 5 + \dots + (2n - 1)$. For the arithmetic sequence $a, a + d, a + 2d, a + 3d, \dots$, we see $S_n = a + (a + d) + (a + 2d) + \dots + (a + (n - 1)d)$.

It gets a little awkward writing out such extended sums and so a compact way to indicate a sum, called **summation notation**, is introduced. For the sum of the first 3 odd positive integers above we would write $\sum_{j=1}^3 (2j - 1)$. The Greek letter sigma (Σ) is supposed to be reminiscent of the word summation. The j is called the **index of summation** and the number on the bottom of the Σ specifies the starting value of j while the number above the Σ gives the ending value of j . The idea is that we replace j in turn by 1, 2 and 3, in each case computing the value of the expression following the Σ , and then add up the terms produced. In this example, when $j = 1$, $2j - 1 = 1$,

when $j = 2$, $2j - 1 = 3$ and finally, when $j = 3$, $2j - 1 = 5$. We've reached the stopping value, so we have $\sum_{j=1}^3 (2j - 1) = 1 + 3 + 5 = 9$.

Notice that the index of summation takes only integer values. If it starts at 6, then next it is replaced by 7, and so on. If it starts at -11 , then next it is replaced by -10 , and then by -9 , and so on.

The symbol used for the index of summation does not have to be j . Other traditional choices for the index of summation are i , k , m and n . So for example,

$$\sum_{j=0}^4 (j^2 + 2) = 2 + 3 + 6 + 11 + 18,$$

and

$$\sum_{i=0}^4 (i^2 + 2) = 2 + 3 + 6 + 11 + 18,$$

and

$$\sum_{m=0}^4 (m^2 + 2) = 2 + 3 + 6 + 11 + 18,$$

and so on. Even though a different index letter is used, the formulas produce the same sequence of numbers to be added up in each case, so the sums are the same.

Also, the starting and ending points can for the index can be changed without changing the value of the sum provided care is taken to change the formula appropriately. Notice that

$$\sum_{k=1}^3 (3k - 1) = \sum_{k=0}^2 (3k + 2)$$

In fact, if the terms are written out, we see

$$\sum_{k=1}^3 (3k - 1) = 2 + 5 + 8$$

and

$$\sum_{k=0}^2 (3k + 2) = 2 + 5 + 8$$

Example 13.6. *We see that*

$$\sum_{m=-1}^5 2^m = 2^{-1} + 2^0 + 2^1 + 2^2 + 2^3 + 2^4 + 2^5 = \frac{127}{2}.$$

Example 13.7. We find that

$$\sum_{n=3}^6 2 = 2 + 2 + 2 + 2 = 8.$$

13.5 Formulas for arithmetic and geometric summations

There are two important formulas for finding sums that are worth remembering. The first is the sum of the first n terms of an arithmetic sequence.

$$S_n = a + (a + d) + (a + 2d) + \cdots + (a + (n - 1)d).$$

Here is a clever trick that can be used to find a simple formula for the quantity S_n : the list of numbers is added up twice, once from left to right, the second time from right to left. When the terms are paired up, it is clear the sum is $2S_n = n[a + (a + (n - 1)d)]$. A diagram will make the idea clearer:

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc} a & & +(a+d) & & +(a+2d) & & +\cdots+ & +(a+(n-1)d) \\ +(a+(n-1)d) & & +(a+(n-2)d) & & +(a+(n-3)d) & & +\cdots+ & a \\ \hline (2a+(n-1)d) & & +(2a+(n-1)d) & & +(2a+(n-1)d) & & +\cdots+ & (2a+(n-1)d) \end{array}$$

The bottom row contains n identical terms, each equal to $2a + (n - 1)d$, and so $2S_n = n[2a + (n - 1)d]$. Dividing by 2 gives the important formula, for $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$,

$$S_n = n \left(\frac{2a + (n - 1)d}{2} \right) = n \left(\frac{a + (a + (n - 1)d)}{2} \right). \quad (13.1)$$

Example 13.8. The first 20 terms of the arithmetic sequence $5, 9, 13, \dots$ is found to be

$$S_{20} = 20 \left(\frac{5 + 81}{2} \right) = 860.$$

For a geometric sequence, a little algebra produces a formula for the sum of the first n terms of the sequence. The resulting formula for $S_n = a + ar + ar^2 + \cdots + ar^{n-1}$, is

$$S_n = \frac{a - ar^n}{1 - r} = a \left(\frac{1 - r^n}{1 - r} \right), \text{ if } r \neq 1.$$

An easy way to remember the formula is to think of the quantity in the parentheses as the average of the first and last terms to be added, and the coefficient, n , as the number of terms to be added.

Example 13.9. The sum of the first ten terms of the geometric sequence $2, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{2}{9}, \dots$ would be

$$S_{10} = \frac{2 - 2\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{10}}{1 - \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)}$$

Notice that the numerator in this case is the difference of the first term we have to add in and the term *immediately following* the last term we have to add in.

The expression for S_{10} can be simplified as

$$S_{10} = \frac{2 - 2\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{10}}{1 - \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)} = 2 \left(\frac{1 - \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{10}}{1 - \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)} \right) = 2 \left(\frac{1 - \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{10}}{\frac{2}{3}} \right) = 3 \left(1 - \frac{1}{3^{10}} \right) = 3 - \frac{1}{3^9}$$

Here is the algebra that shows the geometric sum formula is correct.

Let $S_n = a + ar + ar^2 + \dots + ar^{n-1}$. Multiply both sides of that equation by r to get

$$rS_n = r(a + ar + ar^2 + \dots + ar^{n-1}) = ar + ar^2 + ar^3 + \dots + ar^{n-1} + ar^n$$

Now subtract, and observe that most terms will cancel:

$$\begin{aligned} S_n - rS_n &= (a + ar + ar^2 + \dots + ar^{n-1}) - (ar + ar^2 + ar^3 + \dots + ar^{n-1} + ar^n) \\ &= a + (ar + ar^2 + \dots + ar^{n-1}) - (ar + ar^2 + ar^3 + \dots + ar^{n-1}) - ar^n \\ &= a - ar^n \end{aligned}$$

So $S_n(1 - r) = a - ar^n$. Assuming $r \neq 1$, we can divide both sides of that equation by $1 - r$, producing the promised formula¹:

¹ Find a formula for S_n when $r = 1$.

$$S_n = \frac{a - ar^n}{1 - r} = a \left(\frac{1 - r^n}{1 - r} \right), \text{ if } r \neq 1. \quad (13.2)$$

13.6 Exercises

Exercise 13.1. What is the next term in the sequence $1, 2, 4, 5, 7, 8, \dots$?

What's another possible answer?

Exercise 13.2. What is the 100^{th} term of the arithmetic sequence with initial term 2 and common difference 6?

Exercise 13.3. The 10^{th} term of an arithmetic sequence is -4 and the 16^{th} term is 47. What is the 11^{th} term?

Exercise 13.4. What is the 5^{th} term of the geometric sequence with initial term 6 and common ratio 2?

Exercise 13.5. The first two terms of a geometric sequence are $g_1 = 5$ and $g_2 = -11$. What is the g_5 ?

Exercise 13.6. When is a geometric sequence also an arithmetic sequence?

Exercise 13.7. Evaluate $\sum_{j=1}^4 (j^2 + 1)$.

Exercise 13.8. Evaluate $\sum_{k=-2}^4 (2k - 3)$.

Exercise 13.9. What is the sum of the first 100 terms of the arithmetic sequence with initial term 2 and common difference 6?

Exercise 13.10. What is the sum of the first five terms of the geometric sequence with initial term 6 and common ratio 2?

Exercise 13.11. Evaluate $\sum_{i=0}^4 \left(-\frac{3}{2}\right)^i$.

Exercise 13.12. Express in summation notation: $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{6} + \dots + \frac{1}{2n}$, the sum of the reciprocals of the first n even positive integers.

Recursively Defined Sequences

BESIDES SPECIFYING THE TERMS of a sequence with a formula, such as $a_n = n^2$, an alternative is to give an initial term, usually something like b_1 , (or the first few terms, b_1, b_2, b_3, \dots) of a sequence, and then give a rule for building new terms from old ones. In this case, we say the sequence has been defined **recursively**.

Example 14.1. For example, suppose $b_1 = 1$, and for $n > 1$, $b_n = 2b_{n-1}$. Then the 1st term of the sequence will be $b_1 = 1$ of course. To determine b_2 , we apply the rule $b_2 = 2b_{2-1} = 2b_1 = 2 \cdot 1 = 2$. Next, applying the rule again, $b_3 = 2b_{3-1} = 2b_2 = 2 \cdot 2 = 4$. Next $b_4 = 2b_3 = 8$. Continuing in this fashion, we can form as many terms of the sequence as we wish: 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, \dots . In this case, it is easy to guess a formula for the terms of the sequence: $b_n = 2^{n-1}$.

In general, to define a sequence recursively, (1) we first give one or more initial terms (this information is called the **initial condition(s)** for the sequence), and then (2) we give a rule for forming new terms from previous terms (this rule is called the **recursive formula**).

Example 14.2. Consider the sequence defined recursively by $a_1 = 0$, and, for $n \geq 2$, $a_n = 2a_{n-1} + 1$. The five terms of this sequence are

$$0, \quad 2 \cdot 0 + 1 = 1, \quad 2 \cdot 1 + 1 = 3, \quad 2 \cdot 3 + 1 = 7, \quad 2 \cdot 7 + 1 = 15 \quad \dots$$

In words, we can describe this sequence by saying the initial term is 0 and each new term is one more than twice the previous term. Again, it is

easy to guess a formula that produces the terms of this sequence: $a_n = 2^{n-1} - 1$.

Such a formula for the terms of a sequence is called a **closed form formula** to distinguish it from a recursive formula.

14.1 Closed form formulas

There is one big advantage to knowing a closed form formula for a sequence. In example 14.2 above, the closed form formula for the sequence tells us immediately that $a_{101} = 2^{100} - 1$, but using the recursive formula to calculate a_{101} means we have to calculate in turn a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{100} , making 100 computations. The closed form formula allows us to jump directly to the term we are interested in. The recursive formula forces us to compute 99 additional terms we don't care about in order to get to the one we want. With such a major drawback why even introduce recursively defined sequences at all? The answer is that there are many naturally occurring sequences that have simple recursive definitions but have no reasonable closed form formula, or even no closed form formula at all in terms of familiar operations. In such cases, a recursive definition is better than nothing.

14.1.1 Pattern recognition

There are methods for determining closed form formulas for some special types of recursively defined sequences. Such techniques are studied later in chapter 35. For now we are only interested in understanding recursive definitions, and determining some closed form formulas by the method of *pattern recognition* (aka *guessing*).

14.1.2 The Fibonacci Sequence

The most famous recursively defined sequence is due to Fibonacci. There are two initial conditions: $f_0 = 0$ and $f_1 = 1$. The recursive rule is, for $n \geq 2$, $f_n = f_{n-1} + f_{n-2}$. In words, each new term is the sum of the two terms that precede it. So, the **Fibonacci sequence**

The index starts at **zero**, by tradition.

begins

0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, 89, 144, 233, ...

There is a closed form formula for the Fibonacci Sequence, but it is not at all easy to guess:

$$f_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left(\frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^n - \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left(\frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^n$$

14.1.3 The Sequence of Factorials

For a positive integer n , the symbol $n!$ is read **n factorial** and it is defined to be the product of all the positive integers from 1 to n . In order to make many formulas work out nicely, the value of $0!$ is defined to be 1.

For example, $5! = 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 4 \cdot 5 = 120$.

A recursive formula can be given for $n!$. The initial term is $0! = 1$, and the recursive rule is, for $n \geq 1$, $n! = n[(n - 1)!]$. Hence, the first few factorial values are:

$$\begin{aligned} 1! &= 1[0!] = 1 \cdot 1 = 1, \\ 2! &= 2[1!] = 2 \cdot 1 = 2, \\ 3! &= 3[2!] = 3 \cdot 2 = 6, \\ 4! &= 4[3!] = 4 \cdot 6 = 24, \\ &\vdots \end{aligned}$$

We sometimes write a "general" formula for the factorial as

Why is this **not** a closed form formula?

$$n! = 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 4 \cdots n, \text{ for } n > 0.$$

The sequence of factorial grows very quickly. Here are the first few terms:

1, 2, 6, 24, 120, 720, 5040, 40320, 362880, 3628800, 39916800, 479001600, 6227020800, ...

14.2 *Arithmetic sequences by recursion*

Consider the terms of an arithmetic sequence with initial term a and common difference d :

$$a, (a + d), (a + 2d), \dots, (a + (n - 1)d), \dots$$

These terms may clearly be found by adding d to the current term to get the next. That is, the arithmetic sequence may be defined recursively as (1) $a_1 = a$, and (2) for $n \geq 2$, $a_n = a_{n-1} + d$.

14.3 Exercises

Exercise 14.1. List the first five terms of the sequence defined recursively by $a_1 = 2$, and, for $n \geq 2$, $a_n = a_{n-1}^2 - 1$.

Exercise 14.2. List the first five terms of the sequence defined recursively by $a_1 = 2$, and, for $n \geq 2$, $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + 2$. Guess a closed form formula for the sequence.

Hint: This is a lot like example 14.2.

Exercise 14.3. List the first five terms of the sequence with initial terms $u_0 = 2$ and $u_1 = 5$, and, for $n \geq 2$, $u_n = 5u_{n-1} - 6u_{n-2}$. Guess a closed form formula for the sequence.

Hint: The terms are simple combinations of powers of 2 and powers of 3.

Exercise 14.4. Let r be a fixed real number different from 0. For a positive integer n , the symbol r^n means the product of n r 's. For convenience, r^0 is defined to be 1. Give a recursive definition of r^n analogous to the definition of $n!$ given in this chapter.

Exercise 14.5. Give a recursive definition of the geometric sequence with initial term 3 and common ratio 2.

Exercise 14.6. Generalize exercise 5 to a generic geometric sequence with initial term a and common ratio r .

Recursively Defined Sets

TWO DIFFERENT WAYS of defining a set have been discussed. We can describe a set by the roster method, listing all the elements that are to be members of the set, or we can describe a set using set-builder notation by giving a predicate that the elements of the set are to satisfy. Here we consider defining sets in another natural way: recursion.

15.1 Recursive definitions of sets

Recursive definitions can also be used to build sets of objects. The spirit is the same as for recursively defined sequences: give some initial conditions and a rule for building new objects from ones already known.

Example 15.1. *For instance, here is a way to recursively define the set of positive even integers, E . First the initial condition: $2 \in E$. Next the recursive portion of the definition: If $x \in E$, then $x + 2 \in E$. Here is what we can deduce using these two rules. First of course, we see $2 \in E$ since that is the given initial condition. Next, since we know $2 \in E$, the recursive portion of the definition, with x being played by 2, says $2 + 2 \in E$, so that now we know $4 \in E$. Since $4 \in E$, the recursive portion of the definition, with x now being played by 4, says $4 + 2 \in E$, so that now we know $6 \in E$. Continuing in this way, it gets easy to believe that E really is the set of positive even integers.*

Actually, there is a little more to do with example 15.1. The claim is that E consists of exactly all the positive even integers. In other words, we also need to make sure that no other things appear in E besides the positive even integers. Could 312211 somehow have slithered into the set E ? To verify that such a thing does not happen, we need one more fact about recursively defined sets. The only elements that appear in a set defined recursively are those that make it on the basis of either the initial condition or the recursive portion of the definition. No elements of the set appear, as if by magic, from nowhere.

In this case, it is easy to see that no odd integers sneak into the set. For if so, there would be a smallest odd integer in the set and the only way it could be elected to the set is if the integer two less than it were in the set. But that would mean a yet smaller odd integer would be in the set, a contradiction. We won't go into that sort of detail for the following examples in general. We'll just consider the topic at the intuitive level only.

Example 15.2. Give a recursive definition of the set, S , of all nonnegative integer powers of 2.

Initial condition: $1 \in S$. *Recursive rule:* If $x \in S$, then $2x \in S$.

Applying the initial condition and then the recursive rule repeatedly gives the elements:

$$1 \quad 2 \cdot 1 = 2 \quad 2 \cdot 2 = 4 \quad 2 \cdot 4 = 8 \quad 2 \cdot 8 = 16$$

and so on, and that looks like the set of nonnegative powers of 2.

Example 15.3. A set, S , is defined recursively by

(1) (initial conditions) $1 \in S$ and $2 \in S$, and

(2) (recursive rule) If $x \in S$, then $x + 3 \in S$. Describe the integers in S .

The plan is to use the initial conditions and the recursive rule to build elements of S until we can guess a description of the integers in S . From the initial conditions we know $1 \in S$ and $2 \in S$. Applying the recursive rule to each of those we get $4, 5 \in S$, and using the recursive rule on those gives $7, 8 \in S$, and so on.

So we get $S = \{1, 2, 4, 5, 7, 8, 10, 11, \dots\}$ and it's apparent that S consists of of the positive integers that are not multiples of 3.

15.2 Sets of strings

Recursively defined sets appear in certain computer science courses where they are used to describe sets of strings. To form a string, we begin with an **alphabet** which is a set of symbols, traditionally denoted by Σ . For example $\Sigma = \{a, b, c\}$ is an alphabet of three symbols, and $\Sigma = \{!, @, \#, \$, \%, \&, X, 5\}$ is an alphabet of eight symbols. A **string** over the alphabet Σ is any finite sequence of symbols from the alphabet. For example *aaba* is a string of **length** four over the alphabet $\Sigma = \{a, b, c\}$, and *!!5X\$\$5@@* is a length nine string over $\Sigma = \{!, @, \#, \$, \%, \&, X, 5\}$. There is a special string over any alphabet denoted by λ called the **empty string**. It contains no symbols, and has length 0.

Example 15.4. *A set, S , of strings over the alphabet $\Sigma = \{a, b\}$ is given recursively by (1) $\lambda \in S$, and (2) If $x \in S$, then $axb \in S$. Describe the strings in S .*

The notation axb means write down the string a followed by the string x followed by the string b . So if $x = aaba$ then $axb = aaabab$. Let's experiment with the recursive rule a bit, and then guess a description for the strings in S . Starting with the initial condition we see $\lambda \in S$. Applying the recursive rule to λ gives $a\lambda b = ab \in S$. Applying the recursive rule to ab gives $aabb \in S$, and applying the recursive rule to $aabb$ shows $aaabbb \in S$. It's easy to guess the nature of the strings in S : Any finite string of a 's followed by the same number of b 's.

Example 15.5. *Give a recursive definition of the set S of strings over $\Sigma = \{a, b, c\}$ which do not contain adjacent a 's. For example *ccabbbabba* is acceptable, but *abcbaabaca* is not.*

For the initial conditions we will use (1) $\lambda \in S$, and $a \in S$. If we have a string with no adjacent a 's, we can extend it by adding b or c to either end. But we'll need to be careful when adding more a 's. For the recursive rule we will use (2) if $x \in S$, then $bx, xb, cx, xc \in S$ and $abx, xba, acx, xca \in S$.

Notice how the string a had to be put into S in the initial conditions since the recursive rule won't allow us to form that string from λ .

Here is different answer to the same question. It's a little harder to dream up, but the rules are much cleaner. The idea is that if we

take two strings with no adjacent a 's, we can put them together and be sure to get a new string with no adjacent a 's provided we stick either b or c between them. So, we can define the set recursively by (1) $\lambda \in S$ and $a \in S$, and (2) if $x, y \in S$, then $xby, xcy \in S$.

Example 15.6. Give a recursive definition of the set S of strings over $\Sigma = \{a, b\}$ which contain more a 's than b 's.

The idea is that we can build longer strings from smaller ones by (1) sticking two such strings together, or (2) sticking two such strings together along with a b before the first one, between the two strings, or after the last one. That leads to the following recursive definition: (1) $a \in S$ and (2) if $x, y \in S$ then $xy, bxy, xby, xyb \in S$. That looks a little weird since in the recursive rule we added b , but since x and y each have more a 's than b 's, the two together will have a least two more a 's than b 's, so it's safe to add b in the recursive rule.

Starting with the initial condition, and then applying the recursive rule repeatedly, we form the following elements of S :

$$a, aa, baa, aba, aab, aaa, baaa, abaa, aaba, baaa, \dots$$

Example 15.7. A set, S , of strings over the alphabet $\Sigma = \{a, b\}$ is defined recursively by the rules (1) $a \in S$, and (2) if $x \in S$, then $xbx \in S$. Describe the strings in S .

Experimenting we find the following elements of S :

$$a, aba, abababa, abababababababa, \dots$$

It looks like S is the set of strings beginning with a followed by a certain number of ba 's. If we look at the number of ba 's in each string, we can see a pattern: $0, 1, 3, 7, 15, 31, \dots$, which we recognize as being the numbers that are one less than the positive integer powers of 2 ($1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, \dots$). So it appears S is the set of strings which consisting of a followed by $2^n - 1$ pairs ab for some integer $n \geq 0$.

15.3 Exercises

Exercise 15.1. Give a recursive definition of the set of positive integers that end with the digits 17.

Exercise 15.2. Give a recursive definition of the set of positive integers that are not multiples of 4.

Exercise 15.3. A set S of ordered pairs of integers is defined recursively by (1) $(1, 1) \in S$, and (2) if $(m, n) \in S$, then $(m + 2, n) \in S$, and $(m, n + 2) \in S$, and $(m + 1, n + 1) \in S$. There is a simple description of the ordered pairs in S . What is it?

Exercise 15.4. Describe the strings in the set S of strings over the alphabet $\Sigma = \{a, b, c\}$ defined recursively by (1) $\lambda \in S$ and (2) if $x \in S$, then $axbc \in S$.

Exercise 15.5. Describe the strings in the set S of strings over the alphabet $\Sigma = \{a, b, c\}$ defined recursively by (1) $c \in S$ and (2) if $x \in S$ then $ax \in S$ and $bx \in S$ and $xc \in S$.

Exercise 15.6. A **palindrome** is a string that reads the same in both directions. For example, $aabaa$ is a palindrome of length five and $babccbab$ is a palindrome of length eight. Give a recursive definition of the set of palindromes over the alphabet $\Sigma = \{a, b, c\}$.

Mathematical Induction

AS MENTIONED EARLIER, to show that a proposition of the form $\forall x P(x)$ is true, it is necessary to check that $P(c)$ is true for every possible choice of c in the domain of discourse. If that domain is not too big, it is feasible to check the truth of each $P(c)$ one by one. For instance, consider the proposition *For every page in these notes, the letter e appears at least once on the page.* To express the proposition in symbolic form we would let the domain of discourse be the set of pages in these notes, and we would let the predicate E be *has an occurrence of the letter e*, so the proposition becomes $\forall p E(p)$. The truth value of this proposition can be determined by the tedious but feasible task of checking every page of the notes for an **e**. If a single page is found with no **e**'s, that page would constitute a counterexample to the proposition, and the proposition would be false. Otherwise it is true.

When the domain of discourse is a finite set, it is, in principle, always possible to check the truth of a proposition of the form $\forall x P(x)$ by checking the members of the domain of discourse one by one. But that option is no longer available if the domain of discourse is an infinite set since no matter how quickly the checks are made there is no practical way to complete the checks in a finite amount of time. For example, consider the proposition *For every natural number n , $n^5 - n$ ends with a 0.* The truth of the proposition could be established by

Here the domain of discourse is the set $\mathbb{N} = \{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$.

checking:

$$\begin{array}{cccc}
 0^5 - 0 = 0 & 1^5 - 1 = 0 & 2^5 - 2 = 30 & 3^5 - 3 = 240 \\
 4^5 - 4 = 1020 & 5^5 - 5 = 3120 & 6^5 - 6 = 7770 & 7^5 - 7 = 16800 \\
 8^5 - 8 = 32760 & 9^5 - 9 = 59040 & 10^5 - 10 = 99990 & 11^5 - 11 = 161040 \\
 \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots
 \end{array}$$

(and so on forever.)

Checking these facts one by one is obviously a hopeless task, and, of course, just checking a few of them (or even a few billion of them) will never suffice to prove they are all true. And it is not sufficient to check a few and say that the facts are all clear. That's not a proof, it's only a suspicion. So verifying the truth of $\forall n (n^5 - n \text{ ends with a } 0)$ for domain of discourse \mathbb{N} seems tough.

16.1 Mathematical induction

In general, proving a universally quantified statement when the domain of discourse is an infinite set is a tough nut to crack. But, in the special case when the domain of discourse is the set $\mathbb{N} = \{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$, there is a technique called **mathematical induction** that comes to the rescue.

The method of proof by induction provides a way of checking that all the statements in the list are true without actually verifying them one at a time. The process is carried out in two steps. First (the **basis step**) we check that the first statement in the list is correct. Next (the **inductive step**), we show that if any statement in the list is known to be correct, then the one following must also be correct. Putting these two facts together, it ought to appear reasonable that all the statements in the list are correct. In a way, it's pretty amazing: we learn infinitely many statements are true just by checking two facts. It's like killing infinitely many birds with two stones.

So, suppose we have a list of statements, $p(0), p(1), p(2), \dots, p(k), p(k+1), \dots$. We want to show they are all true. The plan is to show two facts:

- (1) $p(0)$ is true, and
 (2) for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $p(n) \longrightarrow p(n + 1)$.

We then conclude all the statements in the list are true.

16.2 The principle of mathematical induction

The **well ordering property** of the positive integers provides the justification for proof by induction. This property asserts that every non-empty subset of the natural numbers contains a smallest number. In fact, given any nonempty set of natural numbers, we can determine the smallest number in the set by the process of checking to see, in turn, if 0 is in the set, and, if the answer is *no*, checking for 1, then for 2, and so on. Since the set is nonempty, eventually the answer will be *yes, that number is in the set*, and in that way, the smallest natural number in the set will have been found. Now let's look at the proof that induction is a valid form of proof. The statement of the theorem is a little more general than described above. Instead of beginning with a statement $p(0)$, we allow the list to begin with a statement $p(k)$ for some integer k (almost always, $k = 0$ or $k = 1$ in practice). This does not have any effect of the concept of induction. In all cases, we have a list of statements, and we show the first statement is true, and then we show that if any statement is true, so is the next one. The particular name for the starting point of the list doesn't really matter. It only matters that there is a starting point.

Theorem 16.1 (Principle of Mathematical Induction). *Suppose we have a list of statements $p(k), p(k + 1), p(k + 2), \dots, p(n), p(n + 1) \dots$.*

- (1) $p(k)$ is true, and
 (2) $p(n) \longrightarrow p(n + 1)$ for every $n \geq k$,

then all the statements in the list are true.

Proof. *The proof will be by contradiction.*

Suppose that 1 and 2 are true, but that it is not the case that $p(n)$ is true for all $n \geq k$. Let $S = \{n \mid n \geq k \text{ and } p(n) \text{ is false}\}$, so that $S \neq \emptyset$. Since S is a non-empty set of integers $\geq k$ it has a least element, say t . So t is the

smallest positive integer for which $p(n)$ is false. In the ever colorful jargon of mathematics, t is usually called the minimal criminal.

Since $p(k)$ is true, $k \notin S$. Therefore $t > k$. So $t - 1 \geq k$. Since t is the smallest integer $\geq k$ for which p is false, it must be that $p(t - 1)$ is true. Now, by part 2, we also know $p(t - 1) \rightarrow p(t)$ is true. So it must be that $p(t)$ is true, and that is a contradiction. ♣

16.3 Proofs by induction

Many people find proofs by induction a little bit black-magical at first, but just keep the goals in mind (namely check [1] the first statement in the list is true, and [2] that if any statement in the list is true, so is the one that follows it) and the process won't seem so confusing.

A handy way of viewing mathematical induction is to compare proving the sequence $p(k) \wedge p(k + 1) \wedge p(k + 2) \wedge \dots \wedge p(m) \wedge \dots$ to knocking down a set of dominos set on edge and numbered consecutively $k, k + 1, \dots$. If we want to knock all of the dominos down, which are numbered k and greater, then we must knock the k th domino down, and ensure that the spacing of the dominos is such that every domino will knock down its successor. If either the spacing is off ($\exists m \geq k$ with $p(m)$ not implying $p(m + 1)$), or if we fail to knock down the k th domino (we do not demonstrate that $p(k)$ is true), then there may be dominos left standing.

To discover how to prove the inductive step most people start by explicitly listing several of the first instances of the inductive hypothesis $p(n)$. Then, look for how to make, in a general way, an argument from one, or more, instances to the next instance of the hypothesis. Once an argument is discovered that allows us to advance from the truth of previous one, or more, instances, that argument, in general form, becomes the pattern for the proof on the inductive hypothesis. Let's examine an example.

When checking the inductive step, $p(n) \rightarrow p(n + 1)$, the statement $p(n)$, is called the **inductive hypothesis**.

Example 16.2. Let's prove that, for each positive integer n , the sum of the first n positive integers is $\frac{n(n+1)}{2}$. Here is the list of statements we want to verify:

$$\begin{array}{ll}
 p(1) : 1 = \frac{1(1+1)}{2}, & \text{add 2 to both sides, can you make } p(2) \text{ appear?} \\
 p(2) : 1 + 2 = \frac{2(2+1)}{2}, & \text{add 3 to both sides, can you make } p(3) \text{ appear?} \\
 p(3) : 1 + 2 + 3 = \frac{3(3+1)}{2}, & \text{add 4 to both sides, can you make } p(4) \text{ appear?} \\
 p(4) : 1 + 2 + 3 + 4 = \frac{4(4+1)}{2}, & \\
 \vdots & \\
 p(n) : 1 + 2 + \dots + n = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}, & \\
 p(n+1) : 1 + 2 + \dots + (n+1) = \frac{(n+1)((n+1)+1)}{2}, & \\
 \vdots &
 \end{array}$$

Once you figure out the general form of the argument¹ that takes us from one instance of $p(\cdot)$ to the next, you have form of the inductive argument.

¹ For this example it will be some calculation

Proof. Basis: Let's check the first statement in the list, $p(1) : 1 = \frac{1(1+1)}{2}$, is correct. The left-hand side is 1, and the right-hand side is $\frac{1(1+1)}{2} = \frac{2}{2} = 1$, so the two sides are equal as claimed.

Inductive Step: Suppose $p(n)$ is true for some integer $n \geq 1$. In other words, suppose $1 + 2 + \dots + n = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}$. We need to show $p(n+1)$ is true. In other words, we need to verify $1 + 2 + \dots + (n+1) = \frac{(n+1)((n+1)+1)}{2}$.

Here are the computations:

$$\begin{aligned}
 1 + 2 + \dots + (n+1) &= 1 + 2 + \dots + n + (n+1), \\
 &= \frac{n(n+1)}{2} + (n+1), \text{ using the inductive hypothesis,} \\
 &= \frac{n(n+1)}{2} + \frac{2(n+1)}{2}, \\
 &= \frac{n(n+1) + 2(n+1)}{2}, \\
 &= \frac{(n+1)(n+2)}{2}.
 \end{aligned}$$

as we needed to show. So we conclude all the statements in the list are true.



To prove an equality, the usual strategy is to start on one side of the equation, $p(n+1)$ in this case, obtain the other side. We do this through a series of algebraic manipulations and using the general induction hypothesis, $p(n)$, along the way.

16.4 Examples

The next example reproves the useful formula for the sum of the terms in a geometric sequence. Recall that to form a geometric sequence, fix a real number $r \neq 1$, and list the integer powers of r starting with $r^0 = 1$: $1, r, r^2, r^3, \dots, r^n, \dots$. The formula given in the next example shows the result of adding $1 + r + r^2 + \dots + r^n$.

Example 16.3. For all $n \geq 0$, we have $\sum_{k=0}^n r^k = \frac{r^{n+1} - 1}{r - 1}$, (if $r \neq 1$).

Proof (by induction on n): (We assume $r \neq 1$.)

Basis: When $n = 0$ we have $\sum_{k=0}^0 r^k = r^0 = 1$. We also have

$$\frac{r^{n+1} - 1}{r - 1} = \frac{r - 1}{r - 1} = 1.$$

Inductive Step: Now suppose that $\sum_{k=0}^n r^k = \frac{r^{n+1} - 1}{r - 1}$, is true for some $n \geq 0$. Then, we see that

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=0}^{n+1} r^k &= \left(\sum_{k=0}^n r^k \right) + r^{n+1}, \text{ by the recursive definition of a sum,} \\ &= \frac{r^{n+1} - 1}{r - 1} + r^{n+1}, \text{ by induction hypothesis,} \\ &= \frac{r^{n+1} - 1}{r - 1} + \frac{r^{n+2} - r^{n+1}}{r - 1}, \\ &= \left[\frac{r^{n+1} - 1 + r^{n+2} - r^{n+1}}{r - 1} \right], \\ &= \frac{r^{n+2} - 1}{r - 1}. \end{aligned}$$



Example 16.4. For every integer $n \geq 2$, $2^n > n + 1$.

Proof. *Basis:* When $n = 2$, the inequality to check is $2^2 > 2 + 1$, and that is correct.

Inductive Step: Now suppose that $2^n > n + 1$ for some integer $n \geq 2$. Then $2^{n+1} = 2 \cdot 2^n > 2(n + 1) = 2n + 2 > n + 2$, as we needed to show.



In this example, $p(n)$ is the statement:

$$p(n) : \sum_{k=0}^n r^k = \frac{r^{n+1} - 1}{r - 1}$$

Example 16.5. Show that using only 5¢ stamps and 9¢ stamps, any postage amount 32¢ or greater can be formed.

Proof. *Basis:* 32¢ can be formed by using one 5¢ stamp and three 9¢ stamps.


Inductive Step: Now suppose we can form n ¢ postage for some $n \geq 32$. We need to show we can form $(n + 1)$ ¢ postage. Since $n \geq 32$, when we form n ¢ postage, we must use either (1) at least seven 5¢ stamps, or (2) at least one 9¢ stamps. For if both of those possibilities are wrong, we will have at most 30¢ postage.

case 1: If there are seven (or more) 5¢ stamps in the n ¢ postage, remove seven 5¢, and put in four 9¢ stamps. Since we removed 35¢ and put back 36¢, we now have $(n + 1)$ ¢ postage.

case 2: If there is one (or more) 9¢ stamps in the n ¢ postage, remove one 9¢, and put back two 5¢. Since we removed 9¢ and put back 10¢, we now have $(n + 1)$ ¢ postage.

So, in any case, if we can make n ¢ postage for some $n \geq 32$, we can form $(n + 1)$ ¢ postage. Thus, by induction, we can make any postage amount 32¢ or greater. ♣

Example 16.6. Let's now look at an example of an induction proof with a geometric flavor. Suppose we have a 4×5 chess board:

and a supply of 1×2 dominos: 

Each domino covers exactly two squares on the board. A *perfect cover* of the board consists of a placement of dominos on the board so that each domino covers two squares on the board (dominos can be either vertically or horizontally orientated), no dominos overlap, no dominos extend beyond the edge of the board, and all the squares on the board are covered by a domino. It's easy to see that the 4×5 board above has a perfect cover. More generally, it is not hard to prove:

Theorem 16.7. An $m \times n$ board has a perfect cover with 1×2 dominos if and only if at least one of m and n is even.

Example 16.8. Now consider a $2^n \times 2^n$ board for n a positive integer. Suppose somewhere on the board there is one free square which does not have to be covered by a domino. For $n = 3$ the picture could appear as in figure 16.2, where the shaded square is the free square.

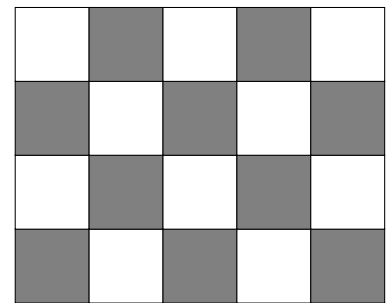


Figure 16.1: 4×5 chessboard

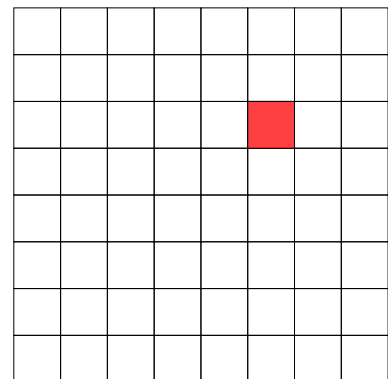



Figure 16.2: $2^3 \times 2^3$ chessboard



This time we have a supply of L-shaped dominos:  These dominos (which can be rotated) each cover exactly three squares on the board. We will prove by induction that every such board has a perfect cover using L-shaped dominos.

Proof. Basis: For $n = 1$, the board to cover is an L-shaped domino, so it certainly has a perfect cover.

Inductive Step: Assume now that for some integer $n \geq 1$, any $2^n \times 2^n$ with one free square can be perfectly covered by L-shaped dominos. Consider a $2^{n+1} \times 2^{n+1}$ board with one free square. Divide the board in half horizontally and vertically. Each quarter of the board will be a $2^n \times 2^n$ board, and one of those quarters will have a free square in it (see figure 16.2).

We now add one L-shaped domino as shown in figure 16.4.

This leaves us with essentially four $2^n \times 2^n$ boards, each with one free square. So, by the inductive assumption, they can each be perfectly covered by the L-shaped dominos, and so the entire board can be perfectly covered. ♣

16.5 Second principle of mathematical induction

There is a second version of mathematical induction. Anything that can be proved with this second version can be proved with the method described above, and vice versa, but this second version is often easier to use. The change occurs in the induction assumption made in the inductive step of the proof. The inductive step of the method described above ($p(n) \rightarrow p(n+1)$ for all $n \geq k$) is replaced with $[p(k) \wedge p(k+1) \wedge \dots \wedge p(n)] \rightarrow p(n+1)$ for all $n > k$. The effect is that we now have a lot more hypotheses to help us derive $p(n+1)$. In more detail, the second form of mathematical induction is described in the following theorem.

Theorem 16.9 (Second Principle of Mathematical Induction).

For integers k and n , if

- (1) $p(k)$ is true, and
 - (2) $[p(k) \wedge p(k+1) \wedge \dots \wedge p(n)] \rightarrow p(n+1)$ for an arbitrary $n \geq k$,
- then $p(n)$ is true for all $n \geq k$.

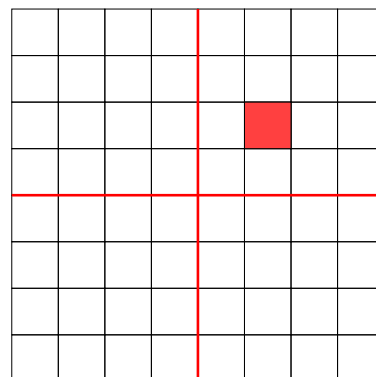


Figure 16.3: Divided $2^3 \times 2^3$ chessboard

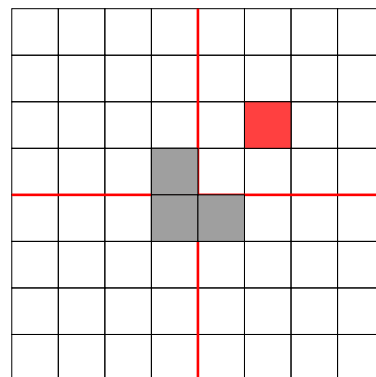


Figure 16.4: $2^3 \times 2^3$ board with domino

This principle is shown to be valid in the same way the first form of induction was justified. The utility lies in dealing with cases where we want to use inductive reasoning, but cannot deduce the $(n + 1)$ st case from the n th case directly. Let's do a few examples of proofs using this second form of induction. One more comment before doing the examples. In many induction proofs, it is convenient to check several initial cases in the basis step to avoid having to include special cases in the inductive step. The examples below illustrate this idea.

Example 16.10. *Show that using only 5¢ stamps and 9¢ stamps, any postage amount 32¢ or greater can be formed.*

Proof.

Basis: We can certainly make

$$32¢ = (1)5¢ + (3)9¢$$

$$33¢ = (3)5¢ + (2)9¢$$

$$34¢ = (5)5¢ + (1)9¢$$

$$35¢ = (7)5¢ + (0)9¢$$

$$36¢ = (0)5¢ + (4)9¢$$

Inductive Step: Suppose we can make all postage amounts from 32¢ up to some amount k ¢ where $k \geq 36$. Now consider the problem of making $(k + 1)$ ¢. We can make $(k + 1 - 5)$ ¢ = $(k - 4)$ ¢ postage since $k - 4$ is between 32 and k . Adding a 5¢ stamp to that gives the needed $k + 1$ ¢ postage. ♣

In that example, the basis step was a little messier than our first solution to the problem, but to make up for that, the inductive step required much less cleverness.

Example 16.11. *Induction can be used to verify a guessed closed form formula for a recursively defined sequence. Consider the sequence defined recursively by the initial conditions $a_0 = 2$, $a_1 = 5$ and the recursive rule, for $n \geq 2$, $a_n = 5a_{n-1} - 6a_{n-2}$. The first few terms of this sequence are 2, 5, 13, 35, 97, A little experimentation leads to the guess $a_n = 2^n + 3^n$.*

Let's verify that guess using induction. For the basis of the induction we check our guess gives the correct value of a_n for $n = 0$ and $n = 1$. That's easy. For the inductive step, let's suppose our guess is correct up to n where $n \geq 2$. Then, we have

$$\begin{aligned} a_{n+1} &= 5a_n - 6a_{n-1}, \\ &= 5(2^n + 3^n) - 6(2^{n-1} + 3^{n-1}), \\ &= (5 \cdot 2 - 6)2^{n-1} - (6 - 5 \cdot 3)3^{n-1}, \\ &= 4 \cdot 2^{n-1} - (-9) \cdot 3^{n-1}, \\ &= 2^{n+1} + 3^{n+1}, \text{ as we needed to show.} \end{aligned}$$

Example 16.12. In the game of **Nim**, two players are presented with a pile of matches. The players take turns removing one, two, or three matches at a time. The player forced to take the last match is the loser. For example, if the pile initially contains 8 matches, then first player can, with correct play, be sure to win. Here's how: player 1: take 3 matches leaving 5; player 2's options will leave 4, 3, or 2 matches, and so player 1 can reduce the pile to 1 match on her turn, thus winning the game. Notice that if player 1 takes only 1 or 2 matches on her first turn, she is bound to lose to good play since player 2 can then reduce the pile to 5 matches.

Let's prove that if the number of matches in the pile is 1 more than a multiple of 4, the second player can force a win; otherwise, the first player can force a win.

Proof. For the basis, we note that obviously the second player wins if there is 1 match in the pile, and for 2, 3, or 4 matches the first player wins by taking 1, 2, or 3 matches in each case, leaving 1 match.

For the inductive step, suppose the statement we are to prove is correct for the number of matches anywhere from 1 up to k for some $k \geq 4$. Now consider a pile of $k + 1$ matches.

case 1: If $k + 1$ is 1 more than a multiple of 4, then when player 1 takes her matches, the pile will not contain 1 more than a multiple of 4 matches, and so the next player can force a win by the inductive assumption. So player 2 can force a win.

case 2: If $k + 1$ is not 1 more than a multiple of 4, then player 1 can select matches to make it 1 more than a multiple of 4, and so the next player

is bound to lose (with best play) by the inductive assumption. So player 1 can force a win. ♣

So, to win at Nim, when it is your turn, make sure you leave 1 more than a multiple of 4 matches in the pile (which is easy to do unless your opponent knows the secret as well, in which case you can just count the number of matches in the pile to see who will win, and skip playing the game altogether!).

16.6 Exercises

Exercise 16.1. Prove: For every integer $n \geq 1$,

$$1 \cdot 2 + 2 \cdot 3 + 3 \cdot 4 + \cdots + n(n+1) = \frac{n(n+1)(n+2)}{3}$$

Exercise 16.2. Prove: For every integer $n \geq 1$,

$$\frac{1}{1 \cdot 2} + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 3} + \frac{1}{3 \cdot 4} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n(n+1)} = \frac{n}{n+1}.$$

Exercise 16.3. Prove: For every integer $n \geq 1$,

$$1 \cdot 2^1 + 2 \cdot 2^2 + 3 \cdot 2^3 + \cdots + n \cdot 2^n = (n-1)2^{n+1} + 2$$

Exercise 16.4. Show that using only 3¢ stamps and 5¢ stamps, any postage amount 8¢ or greater can be formed. Do this twice, using both styles of induction.

Exercise 16.5. Prove: For every integer $n > 4$, we have $2^n > n^2$.

Exercise 16.6. Prove: For every integer $n \geq 1$, the number $n^5 - n$ is a multiple of 5.

Exercise 16.7. A pizza is cut into pieces (maybe some pretty oddly shaped) by making some integer $n \geq 0$ number of straight line cuts. Prove: The maximum number of pieces is $\frac{n^2 + n + 2}{2}$.

Exercise 16.8. A sequence is defined recursively by $a_0 = 0$, and, for $n \geq 1$, $a_n = 5a_{n-1} + 1$. Use induction to prove the closed form formula for a_n is

$$a_n = \frac{5^n - 1}{4}.$$

Exercise 16.9. A sequence is defined recursively by $a_0 = 1, a_1 = 4$, and for $n \geq 2$, $a_n = 5a_{n-1} - 6a_{n-2}$. Use induction to prove that the closed form formula for a_n is $a_n = 2 \cdot 3^n - 2^n, n \geq 0$.

Algorithms

AN **algorithm** IS A RECIPE to solve a problem. For example, here is an algorithm that solves the problem of finding the distance traveled by a car given the time it has traveled, t , and its average speed, s : multiply t and s .

17.1 *Properties of an algorithm*

Over time, the requirements of what exactly constitutes an algorithm have matured. A really precise definition would be filled with all sorts of technical jargon, but the ideas are commonsensible enough that an informal description will suffice for our purposes. So, suppose we have in mind a certain class of problems (such as determine the distance traveled given time traveled and average speed). The properties of an algorithm to solve examples of that class of problems are:

- (1) **Input:** The algorithm is provided with data.
- (2) **Output:** The algorithm produces a solution.
- (3) **Definiteness:** The instructions that make up the algorithm are precisely described. They are not open to interpretation.
- (4) **Finiteness:** The output is produced in a finite number of steps.
- (5) **Generality:** The algorithm produces correct output for any set of input values.

The algorithm for finding distance traveled given time traveled and average speed obviously meets all five requirements of an algorithm. Notice that, in this example, we have assumed the user of the algorithm understands what it means to multiply two numbers. If we cannot make that assumption, then we would need to add a number of additional steps to the algorithm to solve the problem of multiplying two numbers together. Of course, that would make the algorithm significantly longer. When describing algorithms, we'll assume the user knows the usual algorithms for solving common problems such as addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division of numbers, and knows how to determine if one number is larger than another, and so on.

17.2 *Non-algorithms*

Just as important as an example of what an algorithm is, is an example of what is not an algorithm. For example, we might describe the method by which most people look up a number in a phone book. You open the book and look to see if the listing you're looking for is on that page or not. If it is you find the number using the fact that the listings are alphabetized and you're done. If the number you're looking for is not on the page, you use the fact that the listings are alphabetized to either flip back several pages, or forward several pages. This page is checked to see if the listing is on it. If it is not we repeat the process. One problem in this case is that this description is not definite. The phrase *flip back several pages* is too vague, it violates the definiteness requirement. Another problem is that someone could flip back and forth between two pages and never find the number, and so violate the finiteness requirement. So this method is not an algorithm.

17.3 *Linear search algorithm*

Continuing the example from section 17.2 of looking up a phone number, one algorithm for completing this is to look at the first entry in the book. If it's the number you're looking for you're done. Else

move to the next entry. It's either the number you're looking for or you move to the next entry. This is an example of a **linear search algorithm**. It's not too bad for finding Adam Aaronson's number if he is in the book, but it is terrible if you're trying to reach Zebulon Zyzniewski.

17.4 *Binary search algorithm*

Another algorithm to complete that task of finding a phone number is the **binary search algorithm**. We open the phone book to the middle entry. If it's the number we're looking for, we're done. Else we know the number is listed in the first half of the book, or the last half of the book since the entries are alphabetized. We then pick the middle entry of the appropriate half, and repeat the halving process on that half, until eventually the name is located. There are a few details to fix up to make this a genuine algorithm. For example, what is the middle entry if there are an even number of items listed? Also, what happens if the name we are looking for isn't in the phone book? But it is clear with a little effort we can add a few lines to the instructions to make this process into an algorithm.

17.5 *Presenting algorithms*

It is traditional to present algorithms in a *pseudocode* form similar to a program for a computer. For instance, the linear search name lookup algorithm given above could be written in pseudocode form, as shown in Algorithm 17.1 on page 152. Another version using a **for** loop is displayed in Algorithm 17.2.

Input: $(name, phonelist)$: $name$ to be found in a given $phonelist$
Output: $phonelist(namespot) =$ phone number of $name$ in $phonelist$

```

1:  $namespot \leftarrow 1$            ▷ set  $namespot$  to 1, position of first  $name$  in list
2: repeat                       ▷ execute the block of code between repeat and until
3:   if  $list(namespot)$  is  $name$  then   ▷ if True execute code to end if
4:     output  $phonelist(namespot)$ 
5:     stop                               ▷ We're Done!
6:   end if                           ▷ execute the lines between if and end if
7:    $namespot \leftarrow namespot + 1$        ▷ increment  $namespot$  by 1
8: until  $length(list) < namespot$        ▷ if False, jump back to repeat
9: output  $name$  not found
10: stop

```

Algorithm 17.1: Linear search (repeat/until). (A ▷ indicates a comment follows.)

Input: $(name, phonelist)$
Output: $phonelist(namespot)$
Output: $phonelist(namespot) =$ phone number of $name$ in $phonelist$

```

1: for  $namespot \in \{1, 2, \dots, length(phonelist)\}$  do
2:   if  $list(namespot)$  is  $name$  then
3:     output  $phonelist(namespot)$ 
4:     stop
5:   end if
6: end for
7: output  $name$  not found
8: stop

```

Algorithm 17.2: Linear search (for loop)

17.6 Examples

Example 17.1. Here is an algorithm for determining $\lfloor m/n \rfloor$ for positive integers m, n .

Input: positive integers m and n

Output: integer value of $\lfloor m/n \rfloor$

```

1:  $k \leftarrow 0$                                 ▷  $k$  will eventually hold our answer
2: while  $m \geq 0$  do
3:    $m \leftarrow m - n$     ▷ We're doing division by repeated subtraction
4:    $k \leftarrow k + 1$     ▷  $k$  counts the number of subtractions
5: end while
6: output  $k - 1$     ▷ We counted one too many subtractions!(How?)

```

Algorithm 17.3: Calculate $\lfloor m/n \rfloor$

Here are the sequence of steps this algorithm would carry out with input $m = 23$ and $n = 7$: [initial status. $m = 23, n = 7, k = (\text{undefined})$]

instr 1: Set k to be 0 [status: $m = 23, n = 7, k = 0$]

instr 2: is $m \geq 0$? Yes, ($23 \geq 0$) is true. Do next instruction (i.e. *instr 3*).

instr 3: m reset to be $m - n = 23 - 7 = 16$. [status: $m = 16, n = 7, k = 0$]

instr 4: k reset to be $k + 1 = 0 + 1 = 1$. [status: $m = 16, n = 7, k = 1$]

instr 5: jump back to the matching **while** (i.e. *instr 2*).

instr 2: is $m \geq 0$? Yes, ($16 \geq 0$) is true. Do next instruction.

instr 3: m reset to be $m - n = 16 - 7 = 9$. [status: $m = 9, n = 7, k = 1$]

instr 4: k reset to be $k + 1 = 1 + 1 = 2$. [status: $m = 9, n = 7, k = 2$]

instr 5: jump back to the matching **while**.

instr 2: is $m \geq 0$? Yes, ($9 \geq 0$) is true. Do next instruction.

instr 3: m reset to be $m - n = 9 - 7 = 2$. [status: $m = 2, n = 7, k = 2$]

instr 4: k reset to be $k + 1 = 2 + 1 = 3$. [status: $m = 2, n = 7, k = 3$]

instr 5: jump back to the matching **while**.

instr 2: is $m \geq 0$? Yes, ($2 \geq 0$) is true. Do next instruction.

instr 3: m reset to be $m - n = 2 - 7 = -5$. [status: $m = -5, n = 7,$
 $k = 2$]

instr 4: k reset to be $k + 1 = 3 + 1 = 4$. [status: $m = -5, n = 7, k = 4$]

instr 5: jump back to the matching **while**.

instr 2: is $m \geq 0$? **No**, $(-5 \geq 0)$ is false. Jump to instr after **end while**.

instr 6: **output** value of $k - 1$ (i.e. 3). [status: $m = -5, n = 7, k = 4$]

stop! (This is what happens when there are no more instructions to execute.)

Here is a second algorithm for the same problem.

Input: positive integers m and n

Output: integer value of $\lfloor m/n \rfloor$

1: **divide** m by n to one place beyond the decimal, call the result r .

2: **output** the digits of r preceding the decimal point.

Algorithm 17.4: Calculate $\lfloor m/n \rfloor$
(again)

So, again, given input $m = 23$ and $n = 7$ we go through the steps.

instr 1: $r = 3.2$

instr 2: Output 3

stop!

Example 17.2. *An algorithm to make \$ n change using \$10, \$5, and \$1 bills.*

Input: positive integers m and n

Output: integer value of $\lfloor m/n \rfloor$

```
1: while  $n \geq 10$  do
2:   output $10
3:    $n \leftarrow n - 10$ 
4: end while
5: while  $n \geq 5$  do
6:   output $5
7:    $n \leftarrow n - 5$ 
8: end while
9: while  $n \geq 1$  do
10:  output $1
11:   $n \leftarrow n - 1$ 
12: end while
```

Algorithm 17.5: Make change

For an input of 27, the output would be \$10, \$10, \$5, \$1, \$1.

17.7 Exercises

Exercise 17.1. Consider the following algorithm: The input will be two integers, $m \geq 0$, and $n \geq 1$.

Input: positive integers $m \geq 0$ and $n \geq 1$

Output: (to be determined)

$s \leftarrow 0$

while $m \neq 0$ **do**

$s \leftarrow n + s$

$m \leftarrow m - 1$

end while

output s

Describe in words what this algorithm does. In other words, what problem does this algorithm solve?

Exercise 17.2. Consider the following algorithm: The input will be any integer n , greater than 1.

Input: integer $n > 1$

Output: (to be determined)

$t \leftarrow 0$

while n is even **do**

$t \leftarrow t + 1$

$n \leftarrow n/2$

end while

output t

- (a) List the steps the algorithm follows for the input $n = 12$.
- (b) Describe in words what this algorithm does. In other words, what problem does this algorithm solve?

Exercise 17.3. Design an algorithm that takes any positive integer n and returns half of n if it is even and half of $n + 1$ if n is odd.

Such an algorithm is needed quite often in computer science.

Exercise 17.4. Consider the following algorithm. The input will be a function f together with its finite domain, $D = \{d_1, d_2, \dots, d_n\}$.

Input: function f with domain $D = \{d_1, d_2, \dots, d_n\}$

Output: (to be determined)

```

1:  $i \leftarrow 1$ 
2: while  $i < n$  do
3:    $j \leftarrow i + 1$ 
4:   while  $j < n$  do
5:     if  $f(d_j) = f(d_i)$  then
6:       output NO
7:       stop
8:     end if
9:      $j \leftarrow j + 1$ 
10:  end while
11:   $i \leftarrow i + 1$ 
12: end while
13: output YES

```

- (a) List the steps the algorithm follows for the input $f : \{a, b, c, d, e\} \rightarrow \{+, *, \&, \$, \#, @\}$ given by $f(a) = *, f(b) = \$, f(c) = +, f(d) = \$,$ and $f(e) = @$.
- (b) Describe in words what this algorithm does. In other words, what problem does this algorithm solve?

Exercise 17.5. Design an algorithm that will convert the ordered triple (a, b, c) to the ordered triple (b, c, a) . For example, if the input is $(7, X, *)$, the output will be $(X, *, 7)$.

Exercise 17.6. Design an algorithm whose input is a finite list of positive integers and whose output is the sum of the even integers in the list. If there are no even integers in the list, the output should be 0.

Exercise 17.7. A *palindrome* is a string of letters that reads the same in each direction. For example, *refer* and *redder* are palindromes of length five and six respectively. Design an algorithm that will take a string as input and output *yes* if the string is a palindrome, and *no* if it is not.

Algorithm Efficiency

THERE ARE MANY DIFFERENT ALGORITHMS for solving any particular class of problems. In the last chapter, we considered two algorithms for solving the problem of looking up a phone number given a person's name.

Algorithm L: Look at the first entry in the book. If it's the number you're looking for you're done. Else move to the next entry. It's either the number you're looking for or you move to the next entry, and so on. (The **linear search algorithm**)

Algorithm B: The second algorithm took advantage of the arrangement of a phone book in alphabetical order. We open the phone book to the middle entry. If it's the number we're looking for, we're done. Otherwise we know the number is listed in the first half of the book, or the last half of the book. We then pick the middle entry of the appropriate half, and repeat the process. After a number of repetitions, we will either be at the name we want, or learn the name isn't in the book. (The **binary search algorithm**)

The question arises, which algorithm is *better*? The question is pretty vague. Let's assume that *better* means *uses fewer steps*. Now if there are only one or two names in the phone book, it doesn't matter which algorithm we use, the look-up always takes one or two steps. But what if the phone book contains 10000 names? In this case, it is hard to say which algorithm is better: looking up Adam Aaronson will likely only take one step by the linear search algorithm, but binary search will take 14 steps or so. But for Zebulon Zyzniewski,

the linear search will take 10000 steps, while the binary search will again take about 14 steps.

18.1 Comparing algorithms

There are two lessons to be learned from those last examples:

- (1) Small cases of the problem can be misleading when judging the quality of an algorithm, and
- (2) It's unlikely that one algorithm will always be more efficient than another.

The common approach to compare the efficiency of two algorithms takes those two lessons into account by agreeing to the following protocol:

- (1) only compare the algorithms when the size, n , of the problem it is applied to is huge. In the phone book example, don't worry about phone books of 100 names or even 10000 names. Worry instead about phone books with n names where n gets arbitrarily large.
- (2) to compare two algorithms, first, for each algorithm, find the maximum number of steps ever needed when applied to a problem of size n . For a phone book of size n the linear search algorithm will require n steps in the worst possible case of the name not being in the book. On the other hand, the halving process of the binary search algorithm means that it will never take more than about $\log_2 n$ steps to locate a name (or discover the name is missing) in the phone book. This information is expressed compactly by saying the linear search algorithm has **worst case scenario** efficiency $w_L(n) = n$ while the binary search algorithm has worst case scenario efficiency $w_B(n) = \log_2 n$.
- (3) we declare that algorithm #1 is **more efficient** than algorithm #2 provided, for all problems of huge sizes n , $w_1(n) < w_2(n)$, where w_1 and w_2 are the worst case scenario efficiencies for each algorithm.

Notice that for huge n , $w_B(n) < w_L(n)$. In fact, there is no real contest. For example, when $n = 1048576 = 2^{20}$, we get $w_B(n) = 20$ while $w_L(n) = 1048576$, and things only get better for w_B as n gets larger.

In summary, to compare two algorithms designed to solve the same class of problems we:

- (1) Determine a number n that indicates the size of the a problem. For example, if the algorithm manipulates a list of numbers, n could be the length of the list. If the algorithm is designed to raise a number to a power, the size could be the power n .
- (2) Decide what will be called a *step* when applying the algorithms. In the phone book example, we took a step to mean a comparison. When raising a number to a power, a step might consist of performing a multiplication. A step is usually taken to be the most time consuming action in the algorithm, and other actions are ignored. Also, when determining the function, w don't get hung up worrying about miniscule details. Don't spend time trying to determine if $w(n) = 2n + 7$ or $w(n) = 2n + 67$. For huge values of n , the $+7$ and $+67$ become unimportant. In such a case, $w(n) = 2n$ has all the interesting information. Don't sweat the small stuff.
- (3) Determine the worst case scenario functions for the two algorithms, and compare them. The smaller of the two (assuming they are not essentially the same) is declared the more efficient algorithm.

Example 18.1. *Let's do a worst case scenario computation for the following algorithm designed to determine the largest number in a list of n numbers.*

It would be natural to use the number of items in the list, n , to represent the size of a problem. And let's use the comparisons as steps. We are going to make two comparisons each for each of the items in the list in every case (every case is a worst case for this algorithm!). So we give this algorithm an efficiency $w(n) = 2n$. Notice that we actually only need comparisons for the last $n - 1$ items in the list, and the exact number of times the comparisons in instructions (3) and (4) are carried out might take a few minutes to figure out. But it's clear that both are carried out about n times, and since we are

Input: a list of n numbers a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n

Output: $\text{maximum}(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$

```
1:  $max \leftarrow a_1$ 
2:  $k \leftarrow 2$ 
3: while  $k \leq n$  do
4:   if  $max < a_k$  then
5:      $max \leftarrow a_k$ 
6:   end if
7: end while
8: output  $max$ 
```

Algorithm 18.1: Maximum list value

only interested in huge n 's, being off by a few (or a few billion) isn't really going to matter at all.

18.2 Exercises

Exercise 18.1. For the algorithm presented in exercise 17.2 from the last chapter:

- (a) Select a value to represent the size of an instance of the problem the algorithm is designed to solve.
- (b) Decide what will constitute a step in the algorithm.
- (c) Determine the worst case scenario function $w(n)$.

Exercise 18.2. Repeat exercise 18.1 for the following algorithm:

Input: Sets of reals: $\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$ and $\{y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n\}$ of size n

Output: (to be determined)

```
1:  $S \leftarrow 0$ 
2:  $i \leftarrow 1$ 
3: while  $i \leq n$  do
4:    $S \leftarrow S + x_i \cdot y_i$ 
5:    $i \leftarrow i + 1$ 
6: end while
7: output  $S$ 
```

The Growth of Functions

NOW THAT WE HAVE AN IDEA of how to determine the efficiency of an algorithm by computing its worst case scenario function, $w(n)$, we need to be able to decide when one algorithm is better than another. For example, suppose we have two algorithms to solve a certain problem, the first with $w_1(n) = 10000n^2$, and the second with $w_2(n) = 2^n$. Which algorithm would be the better choice to implement based on these functions? To find out, let's assume that our computer can carry out one billion steps per second, and estimate how long each algorithm will take to solve a worst case problem for various values of n .

$w(n)$	$n = 10$	$n = 20$	$n = 50$	$n = 100$
$10000n^2$	.001 sec	.004 sec	.025 sec	.1 sec
2^n	.000001 sec	.001 sec	4.2 months	4×10^{11} centuries

Table 19.1: Problem size vs. CPU time used

So, it looks like the selection of the algorithm depends on the size of the problems we expect to run into. Up to size 20 or so, it doesn't look like the choice makes a lot of difference, but for larger values of n , the $10000n^2$ algorithm is the only practical choice.

It is worth noting that the values of the efficiency functions for small values of n can be deceiving. It is also worth noting that, from a practical point of view, simply designing an algorithm to solve a problem without analyzing its efficiency can be a pointless exercise.

19.1 Common efficiency functions

There are a few types of efficiency functions that crop up often in the analysis of algorithms. In order of decreasing efficiency for large n they are: $\log_2 n$, \sqrt{n} , n , n^2 , n^3 , 2^n , $n!$.

Assuming one billion steps per second, here is how these efficiency functions compare for various choices of n .

$w(n)$	$n = 10$	$n = 20$	$n = 50$	$n = 100$
$\log_2 n$	.000000003 sec	.000000004 sec	.000000005 sec	.000000006 sec
\sqrt{n}	.000000003 sec	.000000004 sec	.000000006 sec	.000000008 sec
n	.000000001 sec	.000000002 sec	.000000004 sec	.000000006 sec
n^2	.0000001 sec	.0000004 sec	.0000016 sec	.0000036 sec
n^3	.000001 sec	.000008 sec	.000064 sec	.00022 sec
2^n	.000001 sec	.001 sec	18.3 minutes	36.5 years
$n!$	.0036 sec	77 years	2.6×10^{29} centuries	2.6×10^{63} centuries

Table 19.2: Common efficiency functions for small values of n

Even though the values in the first five rows of the table look reasonably close together, that is a false impression fostered by the small values of n . For example, when $n = 1000000$, those five entries would be as in table 19.3.

And, for even larger values of n , the \sqrt{n} algorithm will require billions more years than the $\log_2 n$ algorithm.

$w(n)$	$n = 1000000$
$\log_2 n$	.00000002 sec
\sqrt{n}	.000001 sec
n	.001 sec
n^2	17 minutes
n^3	31.7 years

Table 19.3: Efficiency functions where $n = 1000000$

19.2 Big-oh notation

There is a traditional method of estimating the efficiency of an algorithm. As in the examples above, one part of the plan is to ignore tiny contributions to the efficiency function. In other words, we won't write expressions such as $w(n) = n^2 + 3$, since the term 3 is insignificant for the large values of n we are interested in. As far as behavior for large values of n is concerned, the functions n^2 and $n^2 + 3$ are indistinguishable. A second part of the plan is to not distinguish between functions if one is always say 10 times the other. In other words, as far as analyzing efficiency, the functions n^2 and $10n^2$ are indistinguishable. And there is nothing special about 10 in those remarks. These ideas lead us to the idea of the order of growth with respect to n , $\mathcal{O}(\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{n}))$, in the next definition.

Definition 19.1. The function $w(n)$ is $\mathcal{O}(g(n))$ provided there is a number $k > 0$ such that $w(n) \leq kg(n)$ for all n (or at least for all large values of n).

As an example, $n^3 + 2n^2 + 10n + 4 \leq (1 + 2 + 10 + 4)n^3 = 17n^3$ is $\mathcal{O}(n^3)$. So if we have an algorithm with efficiency function $w(n) = n^3 + 2n^2 + 10n + 4$, we can suppress all the unimportant details, and simply say the efficiency is $\mathcal{O}(n^3)$. In this example, it is also true that $w(n)$ is $\mathcal{O}(n^4)$, but that is less precise information. On the other hand, saying $w(n)$ is $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$ is certainly false. To indicate that we have the best possible big-oh estimate allowed by our analysis, we would say $w(n)$ is *at best* $\mathcal{O}(n^3)$.

Loosely speaking, finding the \mathcal{O} estimate for a function selects the most influential, or dominant, term (for large values of the variable) in the function, and suppresses any constant factor for that term.

19.3 Examples

In each example, we find a big-oh estimate for the given expression.

Example 19.2. We have that $n^4 - 3n^3 + 2n^2 - 6n + 14$ is $\mathcal{O}(n^4)$, since for large n the first term dominates the others.

Example 19.3. For large n , we have the inequalities:

$$\begin{aligned} (n^3 \log_2 n + n^2 - 3)(n^2 + 2n + 8), \\ \leq (1 + 1 + 3)n^3(\log_2 n)(1 + 2 + 8)n^2, \\ \leq 55n^5 \log_2 n. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, $(n^3 \log_2 n + n^2 - 3)(n^2 + 2n + 8)$ is $\mathcal{O}(n^5 \log_2 n)$. Alternatively, we have that $n^3 \log_2 n$ and n^2 dominate their respective factors. Thus, again, the product is $\mathcal{O}(n^5 \log_2 n)$.

Example 19.4. We see that $n^5 + 3(2)^n - 14n^{22} + 13 \leq (1 + 3 + 14 + 13)2^n = 31(2^n)$. Hence, the expression is $\mathcal{O}(2^n)$. Or, since $3 \cdot 2^n$ dominates all the other terms for large n , we see that the expression is $\mathcal{O}(3 \cdot 2^n)$. That is, it is of order $\mathcal{O}(2^n)$ since the constant factor is really irrelevant.

The symbol $\mathcal{O}(g(n))$ is read in english as *big-oh of $g(n)$* .

$\mathcal{O}(g(n))$ actually represents the set of functions dominated by $g(n)$. So, it would be proper to write $w(n) = n^3 + 2n^2 + 10n + 4 \in \mathcal{O}(n^3)$. Moreover, we could write $\mathcal{O}(n^2) \subset \mathcal{O}(n^3)$ since the functions dominated by n^2 are among those dominated by n^3 .

Dominant factors may be multiplied.

19.4 Exercises

Exercise 19.1. You have been hired for a certain job that can be completed in less than two months, and offered two modes of payment. Method 1: You get \$1,000,000,000 a day for as long as the job takes. Method 2: You get \$1 the first day, \$2 the second day, \$4 the third day, \$8 the fourth day, and so on, your payment doubling each day, for as long as the job lasts. Which method of payment do you choose?

Exercise 19.2. Suppose an algorithm has efficiency function $w(n) = n \log_2 n$. Compute the worst case time required for the algorithm to solve problems of sizes $n = 10, 20, 40, 60$ assuming the operations are carried out at the rate of one billion per second. Where does this function fit in the table on the second page of this chapter?

Exercise 19.3. Repeat exercise 2 for $w(n) = n^n$.

Exercise 19.4. Explain why $3n^3 + 400n^2 + 2\sqrt{n}$ is at least $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$.

Exercise 19.5. Explain why $10n^2 + 4n + 2\sqrt{n}$ is not $\mathcal{O}(1000n)$.

Exercise 19.6. Find the best possible big-oh estimate for $\sqrt{5n} + \log_2 10n + 1$.

Exercise 19.7. Find the best possible big-oh estimate of $2n^2 + \frac{3}{n}$.

Exercise 19.8. Find the best possible big-oh estimate of $\frac{2n^2 + 2n + 1}{2n + 1}$.
Hint: Begin by doing a long division.

The Integers

Number theory IS CONCERNED with the integers and their properties. In this chapter the rules of the arithmetic of integers are reviewed. The surprising fact is that all the dozens of rules and tricks you know for working with integers (and for doing algebra, which is just arithmetic with symbols) are consequences of just a few basic facts. The list of facts given in sections 20.1 and 20.2 is actually longer than necessary; several of these rules can be derived from the others.

20.1 Integer operations

The set of **integers**, $\{\dots, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, \dots\}$, is denoted by the symbol \mathbb{Z} . The two familiar arithmetic operations for the integers, addition and multiplication, obey several basic rules. First, notice that addition and multiplication are **binary operations**. In other words, these two operations combine a pair of integers to produce a value. It is not possible to add (or multiply) three numbers at a time. We can figure out the sum of three numbers, but it takes two steps: we select two of the numbers, and add them up, and then add the third to the preliminary total. Never are more than two numbers added together at any time. A list of the seven fundamental facts about addition and multiplication of integers follows.

- (1) The integers are **closed** with respect to addition and multiplication.

That means that when two integers are added or multiplied, the result is another integer. In symbols, we have

$$\forall a, b \in \mathbb{Z}, ab \in \mathbb{Z} \text{ and } a + b \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

- (2) Addition and multiplication of integers are **commutative** operations.

That means that the *order* in which the two numbers are combined has no effect on the final total. Symbolically, we have

$$\forall a, b \in \mathbb{Z}, a + b = b + a \text{ and } ab = ba.$$

- (3) Addition and multiplication of integers are **associative** operations.

In other words, when we compute the sum (or product) of three integers, it does not matter whether we combine the first two and then add the third to the total, or add the first to the total of the last two. The final total will be the same in either case. Expressed in symbols, we have

$$\forall a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}, a(bc) = (ab)c \text{ and } a + (b + c) = (a + b) + c.$$

- (4) There is an **additive identity** denoted by 0. It has the property that when it is added to any number the result is that number right back again. In symbols, we see that

$$0 + a = a = a + 0 \text{ for all } a \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

- (5) Every integer has an **additive inverse**: $\forall n \in \mathbb{Z}, \exists m \in \mathbb{Z}$ so that $n + m = 0 = m + n$. As usual, m is denoted by $-n$. So, we write $n + (-n) = (-n) + n = 0$.

- (6) 1 is a **multiplicative identity**. That is, we have $1a = a = a1$ for all $a \in \mathbb{Z}$.

And finally, there is a rule which establishes a connection between the operations of addition and multiplication.

(7) Multiplication **distributes** over addition. Again, we symbolically write

$$\forall a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}, a(b + c) = ab + ac.$$

The seven facts in section 20.1, together with a few concerning ordering stated in section 20.2, tell all there is to know about arithmetic. Every other fact can be proved from these. For example, here is a proof of the cancellation law for addition using the facts listed above.

Theorem 20.1 (Integer cancellation law). *For integers a, b, c , if $a + c = b + c$ then $a = b$.*

Proof. *Suppose $a + c = b + c$. Add $-c$ to both sides of that equation (applying fact 5 above) to get $(a + c) + (-c) = (b + c) + (-c)$. Using the associative rule, that equation can be rewritten as $a + (c + (-c)) = b + (c + (-c))$, and that becomes $a + 0 = b + 0$. By property 4 above, that means $a = b$. ♣*

Theorem 20.2. *For any integer a , $a0 = 0$.*

Proof. *Here are the steps in the proof. You supply the justifications for the steps.*

$$a0 = a(0 + 0)$$

$$a0 = a0 + a0$$

$$a0 + (-(a0)) = (a0 + a0) + (-(a0))$$

$$a0 + (-(a0)) = a0 + (a0 + (-(a0)))$$

$$0 = a0 + 0$$

$$0 = a0$$

♣

Your justification for each step should be stated as using one, or more, of the fundamental facts as applied to the specific circumstance in each line.

20.2 Order properties

The integers also have an order relation, a is less than or equal to b : $a \leq b$. This relation satisfies three fundamental order properties: \leq is a reflexive, antisymmetric, and transitive relation on \mathbb{Z} .

The notation $b \geq a$ means the same as $a \leq b$. Also $a < b$ (and $b > a$) are shorthand ways to say $a \leq b$ and $a \neq b$.

The **trichotomy law** holds: for $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ exactly one of $a > 0$, $a = 0$, or $a < 0$ is true.

The ordering of the integers is related to the arithmetic by several rules:

- (1) If $a < b$, then $a + c < b + c$ for all $c \in \mathbb{Z}$.
- (2) If $a < b$ and $c > 0$, then $ac < bc$.
- (3) If $a < b$ and $c < 0$, then $bc < ac$.

And, finally, the rule that justifies proofs by induction:

The Well Ordering Principle for \mathbb{Z} : The set of positive integers is **well-ordered**: every nonempty subset of positive integers has a least element.

20.3 Exercises

Exercise 20.1. Prove that if $a > 0$ and $b > 0$, then $ab > 0$.

Exercise 20.2. Prove that if $ab = 0$, then $a = 0$ or $b = 0$. Hint: Try an indirect proof with four cases. Case 1: Show that if $a > 0$ and $b > 0$, then $ab \neq 0$. Case 2: Show that if $a > 0$ and $b < 0$, then $ab \neq 0$. There are two more similar cases.

Exercise 20.3. Prove the cancellation law for multiplication: For integers a, b, c , with $c \neq 0$, if $ac = bc$, then $a = b$. (Hint: Use exercise 20.2)

21

The divides Relation and Primes

GIVEN INTEGERS a AND b WE SAY that a **divides** b and write $a|b$ provided¹ there is an integer c with $b = ac$. In that case we also say that a is a **factor** of b , or that a is a **divisor** of b , or that b is a **multiple** of a . For example $3|12$ since $12 = 3 \cdot 4$. Keep in mind that *divides* is a relation. When you see $a|b$ you should think *is that true or false*. Don't write things like $3|12 = 4$! If a does not divide b , write $a \nmid b$. For example, it is true² that $3 \nmid 13$.

¹ That is, a divides into b **evenly**.

² Fact: 3 does not divide into 13 **evenly**.

21.1 *Properties of divides*

Here is a list of a few simple facts about the divisibility relation.

Theorem 21.1. For $a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$ we have

- (1) $a|0$
- (2) $\pm 1|a$
- (3) If $a|b$, then $-a|b$
- (4) If $a|b$ and $b|c$, then $a|c$. So $a|b$ is a transitive relation on \mathbb{Z}
- (5) $a| -a$
- (6) If $a|b$ and $b \neq 0$, then $0 < |a| \leq |b|$
- (7) If $a|1$, then $a = \pm 1$
- (8) If $a|b$ and $b|a$, then $a = \pm b$

(9) $a|b$ and $a|c$, then $a|(mb + nc)$ for all $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$

(10) If $a|b$, then $a|bc$ for all $c \in \mathbb{Z}$

Here are the proofs of a few of these facts.

(1) **Proof.** For any integer a , $a0 = 0$, so $a|0$. ♣

(4) **Proof.** Suppose $a|b$ and $b|c$. That means there are integers s, t so that $as = b$ and $bt = c$. Substituting as for b in the second equation gives $(as)t = c$, which is the same as $a(st) = c$. That shows $a|c$. ♣

(9) **Proof.** Suppose $a|b$ and $a|c$. That means there are integers s, t such that $as = b$ and $at = c$. Multiply the first equation by m and the second by n to get $a(sm) = mb$ and $a(tn) = nc$. Now add those two equations: $a(sm) + a(tn) = mb + nc$. Factoring out the a on the left shows $a(sm + tn) = mb + nc$, and so we see $a|(mb + nc)$. ♣

21.2 Prime numbers

The prime integers play a central role in number theory. A positive integer larger than 1 is said to be **prime** if its only positive divisors are 1 and itself. The first few primes are 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29, 31, 37.

A positive integer larger than 1 which is not prime is **composite**. So a composite number n has a positive divisor a which is neither 1 nor n . By part (6) of the theorem above, $1 < a < n$.

So, to check if an integer n is a prime, we can trial divide it in turn by 2, 3, 4, 5, \dots , $n - 1$, and if we find one of these that divides n , we can stop, concluding that n is not a prime. On the other hand, if we find that none of those divide n , then we can conclude n is a prime. This algorithm for checking a number for primeness can be made more efficient. For example, there is really no need to test to see if 4 divides n if we have already determined that 2 does not divide n . And the same reasoning shows that to test n for primeness we need only check in to see if n is divisible by any of 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13 and so on up to the largest prime less than n . For example, to test 15 for primeness, we would trial divide by the six values 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13. But even this improved algorithm can be made more efficient by the following theorem.

Theorem 21.2. Every composite number n has a divisor a , with

$$2 \leq a \leq \sqrt{n}.$$

Proof. Suppose n is a composite integer. That means $n = ab$ where $1 < a, b < n$. Not both a and b are greater than \sqrt{n} , for if so $n = ab > \sqrt{n}\sqrt{n} = (\sqrt{n})^2 = n$, and that is a contradiction. ♣

So, if we haven't found a divisor of n by the time we reach \sqrt{n} , then n must be a prime.

We can be a little more informative, as the next theorem shows.

Theorem 21.3. Every integer $n > 1$ is divisible by a prime.

Proof. Let $n > 1$ be given. The set, D , of all integers greater than 1 that divide n is nonempty since n itself is certainly in that set. Let m be the smallest integer in that set. Then m must be a prime since if k is an integer with $1 < k < m$ and $k|m$, then $k|n$, and so $k \in D$. That is a contradiction since m is the smallest element of D . Thus m is a prime divisor of n . ♣

Among the more important theorems in number theory is the following.

Theorem 21.4. The set of prime integers is infinite.

Proof. Suppose that there were only finitely many primes. List them all: $2, 3, 5, 7, \dots, p$. Form the number $N = 1 + 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \cdot \dots \cdot p$. According to the last theorem, there must be a prime that divides N , say q . Certainly q also divides $2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \cdot \dots \cdot p$ since that is the product of all the primes, so q is one of its factors. Hence q divides $N - 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \cdot \dots \cdot p$. But that's crazy since $N - 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \cdot \dots \cdot p = 1$. We have reached a contradiction, and so we can conclude there are infinitely many primes. ♣

21.3 The division algorithm for integers

Theorem 21.5 (The Division Algorithm for Integers). If $a, d \in \mathbb{Z}$, with $d > 0$, there exist unique integers q and r , with $a = qd + r$, and $0 \leq r < d$.

Proof. Let $S = \{a - nd | n \in \mathbb{Z}, \text{ and } a - nd \geq 0\}$. Then $S \neq \emptyset$, since $a - (-|a|)d \in S$ for sure. Thus, by the Well Ordering Principle, S has a

The quantities q and r are called the **quotient** and **remainder** when a is divided by d .

least element, call it r . Say $r = a - qd$. Then we have $a = qd + r$, and $0 \leq r$. If $r \geq d$, then $a = (q + 1)d + (r - d)$, with $0 \leq r - d$ contradicting the minimality of r .

To prove uniqueness, suppose that $a = q_1d + r_1 = q_2d + r_2$, with $0 \leq r_1, r_2 < d$. Then $d(q_1 - q_2) = r_2 - r_1$ which implies that $r_2 - r_1$ is a multiple of d . Since $0 \leq r_1, r_2 < d$, we have $-d < r_2 - r_1 < d$. Thus the only multiple of d which $r_2 - r_1$ can possibly be is $0d = 0$. So $r_2 - r_1 = 0$ which is the same thing as $r_1 = r_2$. Thus $d(q_1 - q_2) = 0 = d \cdot 0$. Since $d \neq 0$ we can cancel d to get $q_1 - q_2 = 0$, whence $q_1 = q_2$. ♣

21.4 Exercises

Exercise 21.1. Determine all the integers that 0 divides.

Exercise 21.2. Prove: For integers a, b , if $a|b$, then $-a|b$.

Exercise 21.3. Prove: For integers a, b, c , if $a|b$, then $a|bc$.

Exercise 21.4. Determine if 1297 is a prime.

Exercise 21.5. Prove or give a counterexample: If p is a prime, then $2p + 1$ is a prime.

Exercise 21.6. Determine the quotient and remainder when 107653 is divided by 22869.

GCD's and the Euclidean Algorithm

THE **greatest common divisor** OF a AND b , NOT BOTH 0, is the largest integer which divides both a and b . For example, the greatest common divisor of 21 and 35 is 7. We write $\gcd(a, b)$, as shorthand for the greatest common divisor of a and b . So $\gcd(35, 21) = 7$.

There are several ways to find the gcd of two integers, a and b (not both 0).

First, we could simply list all the positive divisors of a and b and pick the largest number that appears in both lists. Notice that 1 will appear in both lists. For the example above the positive divisors of 35 are 1, 5, 7, and 35. For 21 the positive divisors are 1, 3, 7, and 21. The largest number appearing in both lists is 7, so $\gcd(35, 21) = 7$.

Another way to say the same thing: If we let D_a denote the set of positive divisors of a , then $\gcd(a, b) =$ the largest number in $D_a \cap D_b$.

The reason $\gcd(0, 0)$ is not defined is that every positive integer divides 0, and so there is no largest integer that divides 0. From now on, when we use the symbol $\gcd(a, b)$, we will tacitly assume a and b are not both 0. The integers a and b can be negative. For example if $a = -34$ and $b = 14$, then the set of positive divisors of -34 is $\{1, 2, 17, 34\}$ and the set of positive divisors of 14 is $\{1, 2, 7, 14\}$. The set of positive common divisors of 14 and -34 is the set $\{1, 2, 17, 34\} \cap \{1, 2, 7, 14\} = \{1, 2\}$. The largest number in this set is $2 = \gcd(-34, 14)$.

Obviously then $\gcd(a, b) = \gcd(-a, b)$ since a and $-a$ have the

same set of positive divisors. So when computing the $\gcd(a, b)$ we may as well replace a and b by their absolute values if one or both happen to be negative.

Here are a few easy facts about gcd's:

- (1) If $a \neq 0$, then $\gcd(a, a) = a$.
- (2) $\gcd(a, 1) = 1$.
- (3) $\gcd(a, b) = \gcd(b, a)$.
- (4) If $a \neq 0$ and $a|b$, then $\gcd(a, b) = |a|$.
- (5) If $a \neq 0$, $\gcd(a, 0) = |a|$.

If $\gcd(a, b) = 1$, we say that a and b are **relatively prime**. When a and b are relatively prime, they have no common prime divisor. For example 12 and 35 are relatively prime.

22.1 Euclidean algorithm

It's pretty clear that computing $\gcd(a, b)$ by listing all the positive divisors of a and all the positive divisors of b , and selecting the largest integers that appears in both lists is not very efficient. There is a better way of computing $\gcd(a, b)$.

Theorem 22.1. *If a and b are integers (not both 0) and $a = sb + t$ for integers s and t , then $\gcd(a, b) = \gcd(b, t)$.*

Proof. *To prove the theorem, we will show that the list of positive integers that divide both a and b is identical to the list of positive integers that divide both b and $t = a - sb$. So, suppose $d|a$ and $d|b$. Then $d|(a - sb)$ so $d|t$. Hence d divides both b and t . On the other hand, suppose $d|b$ and $d|t$. Then $d|(sb + t)$, so that $d|a$. Hence d divides both a and b . It follows that $\gcd(a, b) = \gcd(b, t)$. ♣*

Euclid is given the credit for discovering this fact, and its use for computing gcd's is called the **Euclidean algorithm** in his honor.

The idea is to use the theorem repeatedly until a pair of numbers is reached for which the gcd is obvious. Here is an example of the Euclidean algorithm in action.

Example 22.2. Since $14 = 1 \cdot 10 + 4$, $\gcd(14, 10) = \gcd(10, 4)$. In turn $10 = 2 \cdot 4 + 2$ so $\gcd(10, 4) = \gcd(4, 2)$. Since $4 = 2 \cdot 2$, $\gcd(4, 2) = \gcd(2, 0) = 2$. So $\gcd(10, 14) = 2$.

The same example, presented a little more compactly, and without explicitly writing out the divisions, looks like

$$\gcd(14, 10) = \gcd(10, 4) = \gcd(4, 2) = \gcd(2, 0) = 2$$

At each step, the second number is replaced by the remainder when the first number is divided by the second, and the second moves into the first spot. The process is repeated until the second number is a 0 (which must happen eventually since the second number never will be negative, and it goes down by at least 1 with each repetition of the process). The gcd is then the number in the first spot when the second spot is 0 in the last step of the algorithm.

Now, a more exciting example.

Example 22.3. Find the greatest common divisor of 540 and 252. We may present the computations compactly, without writing¹ out the divisions. We have

$$\gcd(540, 252) = \gcd(252, 36) = \gcd(36, 0) = 36.$$

¹ Do the divisions yourself to verify the results.

22.2 Efficiency of the Euclidean algorithm

Using the Euclidean algorithm to find gcd's is extremely efficient. Using a calculator with a ten digit display, you can find the gcd of two ten digit integers in a matter of a few minutes at most using the Euclidean algorithm. On the other hand, doing the same problem by first finding the positive divisors of the two ten digit integers would be a tedious project lasting several days. Some modern cryptographic systems rely on the computation of the gcd's of integers of hundreds of digits. Finding the positive divisors of such large integers, even with a computer, is, at present, a hopeless task. But a computer implementation of the Euclidean algorithm will produce the gcd of integers of hundreds of digits in the blink of an eye.

22.3 *The Euclidean algorithm in quotient/remainder form*

The Euclidean algorithm can also be written out as a sequence of divisions:

$$\begin{aligned}
 a &= q_1 \cdot b + r_1, & 0 < r_1 < b \\
 b &= q_2 \cdot r_1 + r_2, & 0 < r_2 < r_1 \\
 r_1 &= q_3 \cdot r_2 + r_3, & 0 < r_3 < r_2 \\
 &\vdots \\
 r_k &= q_{k+2} \cdot r_{k+1} + r_{k+2}, & 0 < r_{k+2} < r_{k+1} \\
 &\vdots \\
 r_{n-2} &= q_n \cdot r_{n-1} + r_n, & 0 < r_n < r_{n-1} \\
 r_{n-1} &= q_{n+1} \cdot r_n + 0
 \end{aligned}$$

The sequence of integer remainders $b > r_1 > \dots > r_k > \dots \geq 0$ must eventually reach 0. Let's say $r_n \neq 0$, but $r_{n+1} = 0$, so that $r_{n-1} = q_{n+1} \cdot r_n$. That is, in the sequence of remainders, r_n is the last non-zero term. Then, just as in the examples above we see that the gcd of a and b is the last nonzero remainder:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \gcd(a, b) &= \gcd(b, r_1) = \gcd(r_1, r_2) = \dots = \gcd(r_{n-1}, r_n) \\
 &= \gcd(r_n, r_{n+1}) = \gcd(r_n, 0) = r_n.
 \end{aligned}$$

Let's find $\gcd(317, 118)$ using this version of the Euclidean algorithm.

Here are the steps:

$$\begin{aligned}
 317 &= 2 \cdot 118 + 81, \\
 118 &= 1 \cdot 81 + 37, \\
 81 &= 2 \cdot 37 + 7, \\
 37 &= 5 \cdot 7 + 2, \\
 7 &= 3 \cdot 2 + 1, \\
 2 &= 2 \cdot 1 + 0.
 \end{aligned}$$

Since the last non-zero remainder is 1, we conclude that $\gcd(317, 118) = 1$. So, in the terminology introduced above, we would say that 317 and 118 are relatively prime.

22.4 Exercises

Exercise 22.1. Use the Euclidean algorithm to compute $\gcd(a, b)$ in each case.

a) $a = 233, b = 89$ b) $a = 1001, b = 13$ c) $a = 2457, b = 1458$

d) $a = 567, b = 349$

Exercise 22.2. Compute $\gcd(987654321, 123456789)$.

Exercise 22.3. Write a step-by-step algorithm that implements the Euclidean algorithm for finding gcd's.

Exercise 22.4. If p is a prime, and n is any integer, what are the possible values of $\gcd(p, n)$?

GCD's Reprised

THE gcd OF a AND b IS DEFINED to be the largest integer that divides them both. But there is another way to describe that gcd. First, a little vocabulary: by a **linear combination** of a and b we mean any expression of the form $as + bt$ where s, t are integers. For example, $4 \cdot 5 + 10 \cdot 2 = 40$ is a linear combination of 4 and 10. Here are some more linear combinations of 4 and 10:

$$4 \cdot 1 + 10 \cdot 1 = 14, \quad 4 \cdot 0 + 10 \cdot 0 = 0, \quad \text{and,} \quad 4 \cdot (-11) + 10 \cdot 1 = -34.$$

23.1 The gcd(a, b) as a linear combination of a and b

If we make a list of all possible linear combinations of 4 and 10, an unexpected pattern appears: $\dots, -6, -4, -2, 0, 2, 4, 6, \dots$. Since 4 and 10 are both even, we are sure to see only even integers in the list of linear combinations, but the surprise is that *every* even number is in the list. Now here's the connection with gcd's: The gcd of 4 and 10 is 2, and the list of all linear combinations is exactly all multiples of 2. Let's prove that was no accident.

Theorem 23.1. *Let a, b be two integers (not both zero). Then the smallest positive number in the list of the linear combinations of a and b is $\gcd(a, b)$. In other words, the $\gcd(a, b)$ is the smallest positive integer that can be written as a linear combination of a and b .*

Proof. Let $L = \{as + bt \mid s, t \text{ are integers and } as + bt > 0\}$. Since a, b are not both 0, we see this set is nonempty. As a nonempty set of positive inte-

gers, it must have a least element, say m . Since $m \in L$, m is a linear combination of a and b . Say $m = as_0 + bt_0$. We need to show $m = \gcd(a, b) = d$. As noted above, since $d|a$ and $d|b$, it must be that $d|(as_0 + bt_0)$, so $d|m$. That implies $d \leq m$. We complete the proof by showing m is a common divisor of a and b . The plan is to divide a by m and show the remainder must be 0. So write $a = qm + r$ with $0 \leq r < m$. Solving for r we get $0 \leq r = a - qm = a - q(as_0 + bt_0) = a(1 - qs_0) + b(-qt_0) < m$. That shows r is a linear combination of a and b that is less than m . Since m is the smallest positive linear combination of a and b , the only option for r is $r = 0$. Thus $a = qm$, and so $m|a$. In the same way, $m|b$. Since m is a common divisor of a and b , it follows that $m \leq d$. Since the reverse inequality is also true, we conclude $m = d$. ♣

And now we are ready for the punch-line.

Theorem 23.2. *Let a, b be two integers (not both zero). Then the list of all the linear combinations of a and b consists of all the multiples of $\gcd(a, b)$.*

Proof. Since $\gcd(a, b) = d$ certainly divides any linear combination of a and b , only multiples of d stand a chance to be in the list. Now we need to show that if n is a multiple of the d then n will appear in the list for sure. According to the last theorem, we can find integers s_0, t_0 so that $d = as_0 + bt_0$. Now since n is a multiple of d , we can write $n = de$. Multiplying both sides of $d = as_0 + bt_0$ by e gives $a(s_0e) + b(t_0e) = de = n$, and that shows n does appear in the list of linear combinations of a and b . ♣

So, without doing any computations, we can be sure that the set of all linear combinations of 15 and 6 will be all multiples of 3.

23.2 Back-solving to express $\gcd(a, b)$ as a linear combination

In practice, finding integers s and t so that $as + bt = d = \gcd(a, b)$ is carried out by using the Euclidean algorithm applied to a and b and then *back-solving*.

Example 23.3. Let $a = 35$ and $b = 55$. Then the Euclidean algorithm gives

$$55 = 35 \cdot 1 + 20$$

$$35 = 20 \cdot 1 + 15$$

$$20 = 15 \cdot 1 + 5$$

$$15 = 5 \cdot 3 + 0$$

The penultimate equation allows us to write $5 = 1 \cdot 20 + (-1) \cdot 15$ as a linear combination of 20 and 15. We then use the equation $35 = 20 \cdot 1 + 15$, to write $15 = 1 \cdot 35 + (-1) \cdot 20$. We can substitute this into the previous expression for 5 as a linear combination of 20 and 15 to get $5 = 1 \cdot 20 + (-1) \cdot 15 = 1 \cdot 20 + (-1) \cdot (1 \cdot 35 + (-1) \cdot 20)$. Which can be simplified by collecting 35's and 20's to write $5 = 2 \cdot 20 + (-1) \cdot 35$. Now we can use the top equation to write $20 = 1 \cdot 55 + (-1) \cdot 35$ and substitute this into the expression giving 5 as a linear combination of 35 and 20. We get $5 = 2 \cdot (1 \cdot 55 + (-1) \cdot 35) + (-1) \cdot 35$. This simplifies to $5 = 2 \cdot 55 + (-3) \cdot 35$.

23.3 Extended Euclidean Algorithm

The sort of computation in section 23.2 gets a little tedious, keeping track of equations and coefficients. Moreover, the back-substitution method isn't very pleasant from a programming perspective since all the equations in the Euclidean algorithm need to be saved before solving for the coefficients in a linear combination for the $\gcd(a, b)$. The Extended Euclidean Algorithm is a forward-substitution method that allows us to compute linear combinations as we calculate remainders on the way to finding $\gcd(a, b)$.

There are two new ideas that we need to add to our Euclidean Algorithm for computing $\gcd(a, b)$: every remainder can be written as a linear combination of a and b , and we can use the quotient-remainder computation to generate new linear combinations. An example is the best way to see how this works.

Example 23.4. Let $a = 6567$ and $b = 987$. We would like to find $\gcd(a, b) = \gcd(6567, 987)$ and coefficients s and t in a linear combi-

nation: $a(s) + b(t) = \gcd(a, b)$. Suppose that we had found the remainders $r_3 = 303$ and $r_4 = 39$, and had found corresponding linear combinations:

$$\text{eqn 3: } 6567(2) + 987(-13) = 303, \text{ and}$$

$$\text{eqn 4: } 6567(-3) + 987(20) = 39.$$

To find the next remainder, r_5 , the Euclidean Algorithm has us calculate the quotient, $q_4 = 7$, and then the remainder as $r_5 = r_3 - r_4 \times q_4 = 30$.

The Extended Euclidean Algorithm finds the next equation, (eqn 5), by performing the same operation on (eqn 3) and (eqn 4):

$$(6567(2) + 987(-13)) - (6567(-3) + 987(20)) \times (7) = (303) - (39) \times (7),$$

$$6567(23) + 987(-153) = 30.$$

In order to get the process started we need two initial equations based on the values of a and b . That is, we will pretend that they are “remainders”, say $r_{-1} = 6567$ and $r_0 = 987$, that come before the first true remainder, r_1 .

The complete Extended Euclidean Algorithm process is shown in the table.

The last equation with a non-zero remainder is a linear combination of 6567 and 987 equal to the $\gcd(6567, 987) = 3$. That is, we have

$$6567(101) + 987(-672) = 3.$$

Notice that every equation in Example 23.4 has the same form:

$$6567(s_i) + 987(t_i) = r_i. \quad (23.1)$$

The only values that change are the linear combination coefficients, s_i and t_i , the remainders, r_i , and the quotient values q_{i-1} . If we remember the equation form 23.1, we could just write the changing values in a tabular form (see Table 23.1).

To generate a new, i th row in a table consider the two consecutive previous rows as equations:

$$a(s_{i-2}) + b(t_{i-2}) = r_{i-2}, \text{ and } a(s_{i-1}) + b(t_{i-1}) = r_{i-1}.$$

After finding the quotient q_{i-1} so that $r_{i-2} = q_{i-1}r_{i-1} + r_i$, we subtract q_{i-1} times the $i - 1$ equation from the $i - 2$ equation.

Check this computation!

$$\begin{aligned} \text{eqn -1: } & 6567(\quad 1) + 987(\quad 0) = 6567, \\ \text{eqn 0: } & 6567(\quad 0) + 987(\quad 1) = 987, \\ \text{eqn 1: } & 6567(\quad 1) + 987(\quad -6) = 645, (q_0 = 6), \\ \text{eqn 2: } & 6567(\quad -1) + 987(\quad 7) = 342, (q_1 = 1), \\ \text{eqn 3: } & 6567(\quad 2) + 987(\quad -13) = 303, (q_2 = 1), \\ \text{eqn 4: } & 6567(\quad -3) + 987(\quad 20) = 39, (q_3 = 1), \\ \text{eqn 5: } & 6567(\quad 23) + 987(\quad -153) = 30, (q_4 = 7), \\ \text{eqn 6: } & 6567(\quad -26) + 987(\quad 173) = 9, (q_5 = 1), \\ \text{eqn 7: } & 6567(\quad 101) + 987(\quad -672) = 3, (q_6 = 3), \\ \text{eqn 8: } & 6567(\quad -329) + 987(\quad 2189) = 0, (q_7 = 3). \end{aligned}$$

The s_i and t_i are called *Bézout Coefficients*.

i	s_i	t_i	r_i	q_{i-1}
-1	1	0	6567	
0	0	1	987	
1	1	-6	645	6
2	-1	7	342	1
3	2	-13	303	1
4	-3	20	39	1
5	23	-153	30	7
6	-26	173	9	1
7	101	-672	3	3
8	-329	2189	0	3

Table 23.1: $i: 6567(s_i) + 987(t_i) = r_i, q_{i-1}$

Simplifying the resulting expression, we obtain

$$a(s_{i-2} - q_{i-1} \cdot s_{i-1}) + b(t_{i-2} - q_{i-1} \cdot t_{i-1}) = r_{i-2} - q_{i-1} \cdot r_{i-1}. \quad (23.2)$$

This is our new, *i*th equation:

$$a(s_i) + b(t_i) = r_i. \quad (23.3)$$

Comparing equations 23.2 with equation 23.3, we see that the s_i and t_i are calculated in exactly the same way from the previous two values as the remainder r_i is.

Since the equation number i plays no role in the computations, we need not include that column in the tableaux.

Example 23.5. Find $d = \gcd(55, 35)$ and a linear combination $55(s) + 35(t) = d$.

Complete the tableaux in the table using the Extended Euclidean Algorithm. Compare these calculations to those of Example 23.3, where we used the back-substitution method.

s_i	t_i	r_i	q_{i-1}
1	0	55	
0	1	35	
1	-1	20	1
-1		15	1
			1
			3

Often, when performing the Algorithm by hand it is more convenient to write the tableaux horizontally, as in the following example.

Example 23.6. Find $\gcd(107653, 22869)$, and write it as a linear combination of those two numbers. The complete Extended Euclidean Algorithm table is displayed in table 23.2, where the rows correspond to q_{i-1}, r_i, t_i, s_i , respectively.

		4	1	2	2	2	1	1	9	2	1	2
107653	22869	16177	6692	2793	1106	581	525	56	21	14	7	0
0	1	-4	5	-14	33	-80	113	-193	1850	-3893	5743	-15379
1	0	1	-1	3	-7	17	-24	41	-393	827	-1220	3267

Table 23.2: $\gcd(107653, 22869)$

Thus, we may conclude that

$$\gcd(107653, 22869) = 7 = (107653)(-1220) + (22869)(5743).$$

23.4 General Linear Combinations for $\gcd(a, b)$

In section 23.3 we saw how the Extended Euclidean Algorithm may be used to find a linear combination of the form $a(s) + b(t) = \gcd(a, b)$. It is often necessary to find all such linear combinations, (see section 25.3). In particular, such general linear combinations are found in the study of cryptography. The Algorithm stops when we reach a remainder of zero. It turns out that the corresponding values of s_i and t_i , which we haven't used yet, allow us to find the form for all linear combinations that equal $\gcd(a, b)$.

Example 23.7. Consider example 23.4 wherein we wanted to express $\gcd(6567, 987)$ as a linear combination. We found at the end of the process that $\gcd(6567, 987) = 3$ and

$$\begin{aligned} 6567(101) + 987(-672) &= 3, \text{ and,} \\ 6567(-329) + 987(2189) &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Now, for any integer, say n , we may multiply the last equation by n and retain zero on the right. Finally, if we add that new equation to the previous one, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} 6567(101 - 329n) + 987(-672 + 2189n) &= 3, \text{ and,} \\ 6567(-329n) + 987(2189n) &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

The new penultimate equation gives the form for all the linear combinations equal to the $\gcd(6567, 987)$:

$$6567(101 - 329n) + 987(-672 + 2189n) = \gcd(6567, 987) = 3.$$

Each pair of Bézout Coefficients can be shown to be relatively prime¹. In particular, the last equation in the Extended Euclidean Algorithm,

$$a(s_{k+1}) + b(t_{k+1}) = 0,$$

has minimal coefficients s_{k+1} and t_{k+1} in that every other such pair is a common multiple of these two². This means that, given any integer n , ns_{k+1} and nt_{k+1} also satisfy the equation. In fact, it is easy to see

¹ See page 182 for the definition of relatively prime.

² See section 25.3.

that

$$a(ns_{k+1}) + b(nt_{k+1}) = 0.$$

Finally, to obtain the general solution, as we did in example 23.7, we add this to the Bézout equation for the $\gcd(a, b)$, obtaining

$$a(s_k + ns_{k+1}) + b(t_k + nt_{k+1}) = \gcd(a, b).$$

One of s_{k+1} and t_{k+1} will always be negative!

23.5 Exercises

Exercise 23.1. Determine $\gcd(13447, 7667)$ and write it as a linear combination of 13447 and 7667. Try both the method of back-substitution and the Extended Euclidean Algorithm to determine a suitable linear combination.

Exercise 23.2. What can you conclude about $\gcd(a, b)$ if there are integers s, t with $as + bt = 1$?

Exercise 23.3. What can you conclude about $\gcd(a, b)$ if there are integers s, t with $as + bt = 19$?

Exercise 23.4. What can you conclude about $\gcd(a, b)$ if there are integers s, t with $as + bt = 18$?

The Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic

THE FUNDAMENTAL THEOREM OF ARITHMETIC STATES the familiar fact that every positive integer greater than 1 can be written in exactly one way as a product of primes. For example, the prime factorization of 60 is $2^2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5$, and the prime factorization of 625 is 5^4 . The factorization of 60 can be written in several different ways: $60 = 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 = 5 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 2$, and so on. The order in which the factors are written does not matter. The factorization of 60 into primes will always have two 2's, one 3, and one 5. One more example: The factorization of 17 consists of the single factor 17. In the *standard form* of the factorization of an integer greater than 1, the primes are written in order of size, and exponents are used for primes that are repeated in the factorization. So, for example, the standard factorization of 60 is $60 = 2^2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5$.

24.1 Prime divisors

Before proving the Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic, we will need to assemble a few facts.

Theorem 24.1. *If $n|ab$ and n and a are relatively prime, then $n|b$.*

Proof. *Suppose $n|ab$ and that $\gcd(n, a) = 1$. We can find integers s, t such that $ns + at = 1$. Multiply both sides of that equation by b to get $nsb + abt = b$. Since n divides both terms on the left side of that equation, it divides their sum, which is b . ♣*

One consequence of this theorem is that if a prime divides a product of some integers, then it must divide one of the factors. That is so since if a prime does not divide an integer, then it is relatively prime to that integer. That is useful enough to state as a theorem.

Theorem 24.2. *If p is a prime, and $p|a_1a_2 \cdots a_n$, then $p|a_j$ for some $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$.*

24.2 Proving the Fundamental Theorem

Theorem 24.3 (Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic). *If $n > 1$ is an integer, then there exist prime numbers $p_1 \leq p_2 \leq \dots \leq p_r$ such that $n = p_1p_2 \cdots p_r$ and there is only one such prime factorization of n .*

Proof. *There are two things to prove: (1) every $n > 1$ can be written in at least one way as a product of primes (in increasing order) and (2) there cannot be two different such expressions equal to n .*

We will prove these by induction. For the basis, we see that 2 can be written as a product of primes (namely $2 = 2$) and, since 2 is the smallest prime, this is the only way to write 2 as a product of primes.

For the inductive step, suppose every integer from 2 to k can be written uniquely as a product of primes. Now consider the number $k + 1$. We consider two cases:

- (1) *If $k + 1$ is a prime then $k + 1$ is already an expression for $k + 1$ as a product of primes. There cannot be another expression for $k + 1$ as a product of primes, for if $k + 1 = pm$ with p a prime, then $p|k + 1$ and p and $k + 1$ both primes tells us $p = k + 1$, and so $m = 1$.*
- (2) *If $k + 1$ is not a prime, then we can write $k + 1 = ab$ with $2 \leq a, b \leq k$. By the inductive hypothesis, each of a and b can be written as products of primes, say $a = p_1p_2 \cdots p_s$ and $b = q_1q_2 \cdots q_t$. That means $k + 1 = p_1p_2 \cdots p_sq_1q_2 \cdots q_t$, and we can rearrange the primes in increasing order. To complete the proof, we need to show $k + 1$ cannot be written in more than one way as a product of an increasing list of primes. So suppose $k + 1$ has two different such expressions: $k + 1 = u_1u_2 \cdots u_l = v_1v_2 \cdots v_m$. Since $u_1|v_1v_2 \cdots v_m$, u_1 must divide some one of the v_i 's and since u_1 and that v_i are both primes,*

they must be equal. As the v 's are listed in increasing order, we can conclude $u_1 \geq v_1$. The same reasoning shows $v_1 \geq u_1$. Thus $u_1 = v_1$. Now cancel u_1, v_1 from each side of $u_1 u_2 \cdots u_l = v_1 v_2 \cdots v_m$ to get $u_2 \cdots u_l = v_2 \cdots v_m$. Since $k + 1$ was not a prime, both sides of this equation are greater than 1. Both sides are also less than $k + 1$. Since we started with two different factorizations, and canceled the same thing from both sides, we now have two different factorizations of a number between 2 and k . That contradicts the inductive assumption. We conclude the the prime factorization of $k + 1$ is unique.

Thus, our induction proof is complete. ♣

24.3 Number of positive divisors of n

We can apply the Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic to the problem of counting the number of positive divisors of an integer greater than 1. For example, consider the integer $12 = 2^2 3$. It follows from the Fundamental Theorem that the positive divisors of 12 must look like $2^a 3^b$ where $a = 0, 1, 2, b = 0, 1$. So there are six positive divisors of 12:

$$2^0 3^0 = 1 \quad 2^1 3^0 = 2 \quad 2^2 3^0 = 4 \quad 2^0 3^1 = 3 \quad 2^1 3^1 = 6 \quad 2^2 3^1 = 12$$

24.4 Exercises

Exercise 24.1. Determine the prime factorization of 345678.

Exercise 24.2. Determine the prime factorization of 1016.

Exercise 24.3. List all the positive divisors of 1016.

Exercise 24.4. How many positive divisors does 345678 have?

Linear Diophantine Equations

CONSIDER THE FOLLOWING PROBLEM:

Al buys some books at \$25 each, and some magazines at \$3 each. If he spent a total of \$88, how many books and how many magazines did Al buy? At first glance, it does not seem we are given enough information to solve this problem. Letting x be the number of books Al bought, and y the number of magazines, then the equation we need to solve is $25x + 3y = 88$. Thinking back to college algebra days, we recognize $25x + 3y = 88$ as the equation of a straight line in the plane, and any point along the line will give a solution to the equation. For example, $x = 0$ and $y = \frac{88}{3}$ is one solution. But, in the context of this problem, that solution makes no sense because Al cannot buy a fraction of a magazine. We need a solution in which x and y are both integers. In fact, we need even a little more care than that. The solution $x = -2$ and $y = 46$ is also unacceptable since Al cannot buy a negative number of books. So we really need solutions in which x and y are both nonnegative integers. The problem can be solved by brute force: If $x = 0$, y is not an integer. If $x = 1$, then $y = 21$, so that is one possibility. If $x = 2$, y is not an integer. If $x = 3$, y is not an integer. And, if x is 4 or more, then y would have to be negative. So, it turns out there is only one possible solution: Al bought one book, and 21 magazines.

25.1 Diophantine equations

The above question is an example of a Diophantine problem. Pronounce Diophantine as *dee-uh-FAWN-teen* or *dee-uh-FAWN-tine*, or, the more common variations, *die-eh-FAN-teen* or *die-eh-FAN-tine*. In general, problems in which we are interested in finding solutions in which the variables are to be integers are called **Diophantine** problems.

For a modern pronunciation of Diophantus's name ($\Delta\iota\phi\alpha\nu\tau\omicron\zeta$) see <http://www.pronouncenames.com/Diophantus>

In this chapter we will learn how to easily find the solutions to all linear Diophantine equations: $ax + by = c$ where a, b, c are given integers. To show some of the subtleties of such problems, here are two more examples:

- (1) Al buys some books at \$24 each, and some magazines at \$3 each. If he spent a total of \$875, how many books and how many magazines did Al buy? For this question we need to solve the Diophantine equation $24x + 3y = 875$. In this case there are no possible solutions. For any integers x and y , the left-hand side will be a multiple of 3 and so cannot be equal to 875 which is not a multiple of 3.
- (2) Al buys some books at \$26 each, and some magazines at \$3 each. If he spent a total of \$157, how many books and how many magazines did Al buy? Setting up the equation as before, we need to solve the Diophantine equation $26x + 3y = 157$. A little trial and error, testing $x = 0, 1, 2, 3$, and so on shows there are two possible answers this time: $(x, y) \in \{(2, 35), (5, 9)\}$.

25.2 Solutions and $\gcd(a, b)$

Determining all the solutions to $ax + by = c$ is closely connected with the idea of gcd's. One connection is theorem 23.1. Here is how solutions of $ax + by = c$ are related.

Theorem 25.1. $ax + by = c$ has a solution in the integers if and only if $\gcd(a, b)$ divides c .

So, for example, $9x + 6y = 211$ has no solutions (in the integers) while $9x + 6y = 213$ does have solutions. To find a solution to the last

equation, apply the Extended Euclidean Algorithm method to write the $\gcd(9, 6)$ as a linear combination of 9 and 6 (actually, this one is easy to do by sight): $9 \cdot 1 + 6 \cdot (-1) = 3$, then multiply both sides by $213/\gcd(9, 6) = 213/3 = 71$ to get $(71)9 + (-71)6 = 213$. That shows $x = 71, y = -71$ is a solution to $9x + 6y = 213$.

But that is only one possible solution. When a linear Diophantine equation has one solution it will have infinitely many. In the example above, another solution will be $x = 49$ and $y = -38$. Checking shows that $(49)9 + (-38)6 = 213$.

25.3 Finding all solutions

There is a simple recipe for all solutions, once one particular solution has been found.

Theorem 25.2. *Let $d = \gcd(a, b)$. Suppose $x = s$ and $y = t$ is one solution to $ax + by = c$. Then all solutions are given by*

$$x = s + k\frac{b}{d} \quad \text{and} \quad y = t - k\frac{a}{d} \quad \text{where, } k = \text{any integer.}$$

Proof. *It is easy to check that all the displayed x, y pairs are solutions simply by plugging in:*

$$a\left(s + k\frac{b}{d}\right) + b\left(t - k\frac{a}{d}\right) = as + \frac{abk}{d} + bt - \frac{abk}{d} = as + bt = c.$$

Checking that the displayed formulas for x and y give all possible solutions is trickier. Let's assume $a \neq 0$. Now suppose $x = u$ and $y = v$ is a solution. That means $au + bv = c = as + bt$. It follows that $a(u - s) = b(t - v)$. Divide both sides of that equation by d to get

$$\frac{a}{d}(u - s) = \frac{b}{d}(t - v).$$

That equation shows $\frac{a}{d} \mid \frac{b}{d}(t - v)$. Since $\frac{a}{d}$ and $\frac{b}{d}$ are relatively prime, we conclude that $\frac{a}{d} \mid (t - v)$. Let's say $k\frac{a}{d} = t - v$. Rearrange that equation to get

$$v = t - k\frac{a}{d}.$$

Next, replacing $t - v$ in the equation $\frac{a}{d}(u - s) = \frac{b}{d}(t - v)$ with $k\frac{a}{d}$ gives

$$\frac{a}{d}(u - s) = \frac{b}{d}(t - v) = \frac{b}{d}\left(k\frac{a}{d}\right).$$

Since $\frac{a}{d} \neq 0$, we can cancel that factor. So, we have

$$u - s = k\frac{b}{d} \quad \text{so that} \quad u = s + k\frac{b}{d}.$$

That proves the solution $x = u$, $y = v$ is given by the displayed formulas.



25.4 Examples

Example 25.3. Determine all the solutions to $221x + 91y = 39$.

Using the Extended Euclidean Algorithm method, we learn that $\gcd(221, 91) = 13$ and since $13|39$, the equation will have infinitely many solutions. The Extended Euclidean Algorithm table provides a linear combination of 221 and 91 equal to 13: $221(-2) + 91(5) = 13$. Multiply both sides by 3 and we get $221(-6) + 91(15) = 39$. So one particular solution to $221x + 91y = 39$ is $x = -6$, $y = 15$. According to the theorem above, all solutions are given by

$$x = -6 + k\frac{91}{13} = -6 + 7k \quad \text{and} \quad y = 15 - k\frac{221}{13} = 15 - 17k,$$

where k is any integer.

Example 25.4. Armand buys some books for \$25 each and some cd's for \$12 each. If he spent a total of \$331, how many books and how many cd's did he buy?

Let $x =$ the number of books, and $y =$ the number of cd's. We need to solve $25x + 12y = 331$. The gcd of 25 and 12 is 1, and there is an obvious linear combination of 25 and 12 which equals 1: $25(1) + 12(-2) = 1$. Multiplying both sides by 331 gives $25(331) + 12(-662) = 331$. So one particular solution to $25x + 12y = 331$ is $x = 331$ and $y = -662$. Of course, that won't do for an answer to the given problem since we want $x, y \geq 0$. To find the suitable choices for x and y , let's look at all the possible

solutions to $25x + 12y = 331$. We have that

$$x = 331 + 12k \quad \text{and} \quad y = -662 - 25k.$$

We want x and y to be at least 0, and so we need

$$331 + 12k \geq 0 \quad \text{and} \quad -662 - 25k \geq 0.$$

Which means that

$$k \geq -\frac{331}{12} \quad \text{and} \quad k \leq -\frac{662}{25},$$

or

$$-\frac{331}{12} \leq k \leq -\frac{662}{25}.$$

The only option for k is $k = -27$, and so we see Armand bought $x = 331 + 12(-27) = 7$ books and $y = -662 - 25(-27) = 13$ cd's.

25.5 Exercises

Exercise 25.1. Find all integer solutions to $21x + 48y = 8$.

Exercise 25.2. Find all integer solutions to $21x + 48y = 9$.

Exercise 25.3. Sal sold some ceramic vases for \$59 each, and a number of ash trays for \$37 each. If he took in a total of \$4270, how many of each item did he sell?

Modular Arithmetic

KARL FRIEDRICH GAUSS MADE the important discovery of modular arithmetic. Modular arithmetic is also called *clock arithmetic*, and we are actually used to doing modular arithmetic *all the time* (pun intended). For example, consider the question *If it is 7 o'clock now, what time will it be in 8 hours?* Of course the answer is 3 o'clock, and we found the answer by adding $7 + 8 = 15$, and then subtracting 12 to get $15 - 12 = 3$. Actually, we are so accustomed to that sort of calculation, we probably just immediately blurt out the answer without stopping to think how we figured it out. But trying a less familiar version of the same sort of problem makes it plain exactly what we needed to do to answer such questions: *If it is 7 o'clock now, what time will it be in 811 hours?* To find out, we add $7 + 811 = 818$, then divide that by 12, getting $818 = (68)(12) + 2$, and so we conclude it will be 2 o'clock. The general rule is: to find the time h hours after t o'clock, add $h + t$, divide by 12 and take the remainder.

There is nothing special about the number 12 in the above discussion. We can imagine a clock with any integer number of hours (greater than 1) on the clock. For example, consider a clock with 5 hours. What time will it be 61 hours after 2 o'clock. Since $61 + 2 = 63 = (12)(5) + 3$, the answer is 3 o'clock.

In the general case, if we have a clock with m hours, then the time h hours after t o'clock will be the remainder when $t + h$ is divided by m .

26.1 The modulo m equivalence relation

This can all be expressed in more mathematical sounding language. The key is obviously the notion of remainder. That leads to the following definition:

Definition 26.1. Given an integer $m > 1$, we say that two integers a and b are **congruent modulo m** , and write $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$, in case a and b leave the same remainder when divided by m .

So, the reason it is 2 o'clock 811 hours after 7 o'clock is that

$$811 + 7 \equiv 2 \pmod{12}$$

Theorem 26.2. Congruence modulo m defines an equivalence relation on \mathbb{Z} .

Proof. The relation is clearly reflexive since every number leaves the same remainder as itself when divided by m . Next, if a and b leave the same remainder when divided by m , so do b and a , so the relation is symmetric. Finally, if a and b leave the same remainder, and b and c leave the same remainder, then a and c leave the same remainder, and so the relation is transitive. ♣

There is an alternative way to think of congruence modulo m .

Theorem 26.3. $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ if and only if $m|(a - b)$.

Proof. Suppose $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$. That means a and b leave the same remainder, say r when divided by m . So we can write $a = jm + r$ and $b = km + r$. Subtracting the second equation from the first gives $a - b = (jm + r) - (km + r) = jm - km = (j - k)m$, and that shows $m|(a - b)$.

For the converse, suppose $m|(a - b)$. Divide a, b by m to get quotients and remainders: $a = jm + r$ and $b = km + s$, where $0 \leq r, s < m$. We need to show that $r = s$. Subtracting the second equation from the first gives $a - b = m(j - k) + (r - s)$. Since m divides $a - b$ and m divides $m(j - k)$, we can conclude m divides $(a - b) - m(j - k) = r - s$. Now since $0 \leq r, s < m$, the quantity $r - s$ must be one of the numbers $m - 1, m - 2, \dots, 2, 1, 0, -1, -2, \dots, -(m - 1)$. The only number in that list that m divides is 0, and so $r - s = 0$. That is, $r = s$, as we wanted to show. ♣

26.2 Equivalence classes modulo m

The equivalence class of an integer a with respect to congruence modulo m will be denoted by $[a]$, or $[a]_m$ in case we are employing more than one number m as a *modulus*. In other words, $[a]$ is the set of all integers that leave the same remainder as a when divided by m . Or, another way to say the same thing, $[a]$ comprises all integers b such that $b - a$ is a multiple of m . That means $b - a = km$, or $b = a + km$.

That last version is often the easiest way to think about the integers that appear in $[a]$: start with a and add and subtract any number of m 's.

We know that the distinct equivalence classes partition \mathbb{Z} . Since dividing an integer by m leaves one of $0, 1, 2, \dots, m - 1$ as a remainder, we can conclude that there are exactly m equivalence classes modulo m . In particular, $[0], [1], [2], [3], \dots, [m - 1]$ is a list of all the different equivalence classes modulo m . It is traditional when working with modular arithmetic to drop the $[\]$ symbols denoting the equivalence classes, and simply write the representatives. So we would say, modulo m , there are m numbers: $0, 1, 2, 3, \dots, m - 1$. But keep in mind that each of those numbers really represents a set, and we can replace any number in that list with another equivalent to it modulo m . For example, we can replace the 0 by m . The list $1, 2, 3, \dots, m - 1, m$ still consists of all the distinct values modulo m .

For example, the equivalence class of 7 modulo 11 would be

$$[7] = \{\dots, -15, -4, 7, 18, 29, 40, \dots\}.$$



26.3 Modular arithmetic

One reason the relation of congruence modulo m useful is that addition and multiplication of numbers modulo m acts in many ways just like arithmetic with ordinary integers.

Theorem 26.4. *If $a \equiv c \pmod{m}$, and $b \equiv d \pmod{m}$, then $a + b \equiv c + d \pmod{m}$ and $ab \equiv cd \pmod{m}$.*

Proof. *Suppose $a \equiv c \pmod{m}$ and $b \equiv d \pmod{m}$. Then there exist integers k and l with $a = c + km$ and $b = d + lm$. So $a + b = c + km + d + lm = (c + d) + (k + l)m$. This can be rewritten as $(a + b) - (c + d) =$*

$(k+l)m$, where $k+l \in \mathbb{Z}$. So $a+b \equiv c+d \pmod{m}$. The other part is done similarly. ♣

Example 26.5. What is the remainder when $1103 + 112$ is divided by 11? We can answer this problem in two different ways. We could add 1103 and 112, and then divide by 11. Or, we could determine the remainders when each of 1103 and 112 is divided by 11, then add those remainders before dividing by 11. The last theorem promises us the two answers will be the same. In fact $1103 + 112 = 1215 = (110)(11) + 5$ so that $1103 + 112 \equiv 5 \pmod{11}$. On the other hand $1103 = (100)(11) + 3$ and $112 = (10)(11) + 2$, so that $1103 + 112 \equiv 3 + 2 \equiv 5 \pmod{11}$.

Example 26.6. A little more impressive is the same sort of problem with operation of multiplication: what is the remainder when $(1103)(112)$ is divided by 11? The calculation looks like $(1103)(112) \equiv (3)(2) \equiv 6 \pmod{11}$.

Example 26.7. For a really awe inspiring example, let's find the remainder when 1103^{112} is divided by 11. In other words, we want to find $x = 0, 1, 2, \dots, 10$ so that $1103^{112} \equiv x \pmod{11}$.

Now 1103^{112} is a pretty big number (in fact, since $\log 1103^{112} = 112 \log 1103 = 340.7 \dots$, the number has 341 digits). In order to solve this problem, let's start by thinking small: Let's compute 1103^n , for $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$.

$$1103^1 \equiv 1103 \equiv 3 \pmod{11}$$

$$1103^2 \equiv 3^2 \equiv 9 \pmod{11}$$

$$1103^3 \equiv 1103(1103^2) \equiv 3(9) \equiv 27 \equiv 5 \pmod{11}$$

$$1103^4 \equiv (1103)(1103^3) \equiv 3(5) \equiv 15 \equiv 4 \pmod{11}$$

$$1103^5 \equiv (1103)(1103^4) \equiv 3(4) \equiv 12 \equiv 1 \pmod{11}$$

Now that last equation is very interesting. It says that whenever we see 1103^5 we may just as well write 1 if we are working modulo 11. And now we see there is an easy way to determine 1103^{112} modulo 11:

$$1103^{112} \equiv 1103^{5(22)+2} \equiv (1103^5)^{22}(1103^2) \equiv 1^{22}(9) \equiv 9 \pmod{11}$$

The sort of computation in example 26.7 appears to be just a curiosity, but in fact the last sort of example forms the basis of one version of public key cryptography. Computations of exactly that type (but with much larger integers) are made whenever you log into a secure Internet site. It's reasonable to say that e-commerce owes its existence to the last theorem.

While modular arithmetic in many ways behaves like ordinary arithmetic, there are some differences to watch for. One important difference is the familiar *rule of cancellation*: in ordinary arithmetic, if $ab = ac$ and $a \neq 0$, then $b = c$. This rule fails in modular arithmetic. For example, $3 \not\equiv 0 \pmod{6}$ and $(3)(5) \equiv (3)(7) \pmod{6}$, but $5 \not\equiv 7 \pmod{6}$.



26.4 Solving congruence equations

Solving congruence equations is a popular sport. Just as with regular arithmetic with integers, if we want to solve $a + x \equiv b \pmod{m}$, we can simply set $x \equiv b - a \pmod{m}$. So, for example, solving $55 + x \equiv 11 \pmod{6}$ we would get $x \equiv 11 - 55 \equiv -44 \equiv 4 \pmod{6}$.

Equations involving multiplication, such as $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$, are much more interesting. If the modulus m is small, equations of this sort can be solved by trial-and-error: simply try all possible choices for x . For example, testing $x = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6$ in the equation $4x \equiv 5 \pmod{7}$, we see $x \equiv 3 \pmod{7}$ is the only solution. The equation $4x \equiv 5 \pmod{8}$ has no solutions at all. And the equation $2x \equiv 4 \pmod{6}$ has $x \equiv 2, 5 \pmod{6}$ for solutions.

Trial-and-error is not a suitable approach for large values of m . There is a method that will produce all solutions to $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$. It turns out that such equations are really just linear Diophantine equations in disguise, and that is the key to the proof of the following theorem.

Theorem 26.8. *The congruence $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ can be solved for x if and only if $d = \gcd(a, m)$ divides b .*

Proof. *Solving $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ is the same as finding x so that $m \mid (ax - b)$ and that's the same as finding x and y so that $ax - b = my$.*

This is why $4x \equiv 5 \pmod{7}$ has a solution: $\gcd(4, 7) = 1$ and $1 \mid 5$. And, why $4x \equiv 5 \pmod{8}$ has no solutions: $\gcd(4, 8) = 4$, but $4 \nmid 5$.

Rewriting that last equation in the form $ax + (-m)y = b$, we can see solving $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ is the same as solving the linear Diophantine equation $ax + (-m)y = b$. We know that equation has a solution if and only if $\gcd(a, m) | b$, so that proves the theorem. ♣

The theorem also shows that $2x \equiv 4 \pmod{6}$ has a solution since $\gcd(2, 6) = 2$ and $2 | 4$. But why does this last equation have two solutions? The answer to that is also provided by the results concerning linear Diophantine equations.

Let $\gcd(a, m) = d$. The solutions to $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ are the same as the solutions for x to $ax + (-m)y = b$. Supposing that last equation has a solution with $x = s$, then we know all possible choices of x are given by $x = s + k\frac{m}{d}$. So if $x = s$ is one solution to $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$, then all solutions are given by $x = s + k\frac{m}{d}$, where k is any integer. In other words, all solutions are given by $x \equiv s \pmod{\frac{m}{d}}$, and so there are d solutions modulo m ,

Example 26.9. Let's find all the solutions to $2x \equiv 4 \pmod{6}$. Since $x = 2$ is obviously one solution, we see all solutions are given by $x = 2 + k\frac{6}{2} = 2 + 3k$, where k is any integer. When $k = 0, 1$ we get $x = 2, 5$, and other values of k repeat these two modulo 6. Looking at the solutions written as $x = 2 + k\frac{6}{2} = 2 + 3k$, we can see another way to express the solutions would be as $x \equiv 2 \pmod{3}$.

Example 26.10. Find all solutions to $42x \equiv 35 \pmod{91}$.

Using the continued fraction method (or just staring at the numbers 42 and 91 long enough) we see $\gcd(91, 42) = 7$ and, since $7 | 35$, the equation will have a solution. In fact, since $\gcd(42, 91) = 7$, there are going to be seven solutions modulo 91. All we need is to find one particular solution, then the others will all be easy to determine. Again using the continued fraction method (or just playing with 42 and 91 a little bit) we discover $(42)(-2) + (91)(1) = 7 = \gcd(42, 91)$. Multiplying by 5 gives $(42)(-10) + (91)(5) = 35$. The only thing we care about is that $x = -10$ is one solution to $42x \equiv 35 \pmod{91}$. As above, it follows that all solutions are given by $x \equiv -10 \left(\pmod{\frac{91}{\gcd(42, 91)}} \right)$. That's the same as $x \equiv -10 \pmod{13}$, or, even more neatly, $x \equiv 3 \pmod{13}$. In other words, the solutions are 3, 16, 29, 42, 55, 68, 81 modulo 91.

26.5 Exercises

Exercise 26.1.

- (a) On a military (24-hour) clock, what time is it 3122 hours after 16 hundred hours?
- (b) What day of the week is it 3122 days after a Monday?
- (c) What month is it 3122 months after November?

Exercise 26.2. List the integers in $[7]_{11}$.

Exercise 26.3. In a listing of the five equivalence classes modulo 5, four of the values are 1211, 218, -100 , and -3333 . What are the possible choices for the fifth value?

Exercise 26.4. Determine n between 0 and 24 such that

$$2311 + 3912 \equiv n \pmod{25}.$$

Exercise 26.5. Determine n between 0 and 24 such that

$$(2311)(3912) \equiv n \pmod{25}.$$

Exercise 26.6. Determine n between 0 and 8 such that $1111^{2222} \equiv n \pmod{9}$.

Exercise 26.7. Solve: $4x \equiv 3 \pmod{7}$.

Exercise 26.8. Solve $11x \equiv 8 \pmod{57}$.

Exercise 26.9. Solve: $14x \equiv 3 \pmod{231}$.

Exercise 26.10. Solve $8x \equiv 16 \pmod{28}$

Exercise 26.11. Solve: $91x \equiv 189 \pmod{231}$

Exercise 26.12. Let $d = \gcd(a, m)$, and let s be a solution to $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$.

- (a) Show that if $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$, then there is an integer r with $0 \leq r < d$ and $x = s + r \left(\frac{m}{d}\right)$.
- (b) If $0 \leq r_1 < r_2 < d$, then the numbers $x_1 = s + r_1 \left(\frac{m}{d}\right)$ and $x_2 = s + r_2 \left(\frac{m}{d}\right)$ are not congruent modulo m .

Integers in Other Bases

The usual way of writing integers is in terms of groups of ones (units), and groups of tens, and groups of tens of tens (hundreds), and so on. Thus 237 stands for 7 units plus 3 tens and 2 hundreds, or $2(10^2) + 3(10) + 7$. This is the familiar decimal notation for numbers (deci = ten). But there is really nothing special about the number ten here, and it could be replaced by any integer bigger than one. That is, we could use say 7 the way 10 was used above to describe a number. Thus we would specify how many units, how many 7's and 7^2 's and 7^3 's, and so on are needed to make up the number. When a number is expressed in this fashion with b in place of the 10, the result is called the **base- b** expansion (or **radix- b** expansion) of the integer.

For example, the decimal integer 132, is made up of two 7^2 's, four 7's and finally six units. Thus we express the base ten number 132 as 246 in base 7, or as 246_7 , the little 7 indicating the base. For small numbers, with a couple of minutes practice, conversion from base 10 (decimal) to other bases, and back again can be carried out mentally. For larger numbers, mental arithmetic will prove a little awkward. Luckily there is a handy algorithm to do the conversion automatically.

27.1 Converting to and from base-10

For base 10 integers, we use the decimal digits: 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9. In general, for base b , the digits will be 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots , $b - 1$. So, for example, a base 7 numbers use digits 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6.

Conversion from the base b expansion of a number to its decimal version is a snap: For example, the meaning of 2302_5 is

$$2302_5 = 2 \cdot 5^3 + 3 \cdot 5^2 + 0 \cdot 5 + 2 = 2(125) + 3(25) + 0(5) + 2 = 327$$

That sort of computation is so easy because we have been practicing base 10 arithmetic for so many years. If we were as good at arithmetic in some base b , then conversion from base 10 to base b would be just as simple. But, lacking that comfort with base b arithmetic, we need to describe the conversion algorithm from decimal to base b a little more formally. Here's the idea.

Suppose we have a decimal number n that we want to convert to some base b . Let's say the base b expansion is $d_k d_{k-1} \cdots d_2 d_1 d_0$, with the base b digits between 0 and $b - 1$. That means

$$n = d_k \cdot b^k + d_{k-1} \cdot b^{k-1} + \cdots + d_2 \cdot b^2 + d_1 \cdot b + d_0$$

Now, if we divide n by b , we can see the equation above tells us

$$n = (d_k \cdot b^{k-1} + d_{k-1} \cdot b^{k-2} + \cdots + d_2 \cdot b + d_1)b + d_0$$

So the quotient is $q = d_k \cdot b^{k-1} + d_{k-1} \cdot b^{k-2} + \cdots + d_2 \cdot b + d_1$, and the remainder is the base b digit d_0 of n . So we have found the units digit in the base b expansion of n . If we repeat that process on the quotient q , the result is

$$q = (d_k \cdot b^{k-2} + d_{k-1} \cdot b^{k-3} + \cdots + d_2)b + d_1$$

so the next base b digit, d_1 appears as the remainder. Continuing in this fashion, the base b expansion is produced one digit at a time.

Briefly, to convert a positive decimal integer n to its base b representation, divide n by b , to find the quotient and the remainder. That remainder will be needed units digit. Then divide the quotient by b again, to get a new quotient and a new remainder. That remainder gives the next base b digit. Then divide the new quotient by b again, and so on. In this way producing the base b digits one after the other.

Example 27.1. To convert 14567 from decimal to base 5, the steps are:

$$14567 = 2913 \cdot 5 + 2,$$

$$2913 = 582 \cdot 5 + 3,$$

$$582 = 116 \cdot 5 + 2,$$

$$116 = 23 \cdot 5 + 1,$$

$$23 = 4 \cdot 5 + 3,$$

$$4 = 0 \cdot 5 + 4.$$

So, we see that $14567 = 431232_5$.

27.2 Converting between non-decimal bases

Example 27.2. Convert $n = 3355_7$ to base 5.

The least confusing way to do such a problem would be to convert n from base 7 to base 10, and then convert the base 10 expression for n to base 5. This method allows us to do all our work in base 10 where we are comfortable. The computations start with:

$$n = 3 \cdot 7^3 + 3 \cdot 7^2 + 5 \cdot 7 + 5 = 1216.$$

Then, we calculate:

$$1216 = 243 \cdot 5 + 1,$$

$$243 = 48 \cdot 5 + 3,$$

$$48 = 9 \cdot 5 + 3,$$

$$9 = 1 \cdot 5 + 4,$$

$$1 = 0 \cdot 5 + 1.$$

So, we have $3355_7 = 14331_5$.

An alternative method, not for the faint of heart, is convert directly from base 7 to base 5 skipping the middle man, base 10. In this method, we simply divide n by 5, take the remainder, getting the units digit, then divide the quotient by 5 to get the next digit, and so on, just as described above. The rub is that the arithmetic must all be

done in base 7, and we don't know the base 7 times table very well. For example, in base 7, $3 \cdot 5 = 21$ is correct since three 5's add up to two 7's plus one more.

The computation would now look like (all the 7's indicating base 7 are suppressed for readability):

$$3355 = 465 \cdot 5 + 1 \quad (\text{yes, that's really correct!}),$$

$$465 = 66 \cdot 5 + 3,$$

$$66 = 12 \cdot 5 + 3,$$

$$12 = 1 \cdot 5 + 4,$$

$$1 = 0 \cdot 5 + 1.$$

Hence, once again, we have $3355_7 = 14331_5$.

27.3 Computer science bases: 2, 8, and 16

Particularly important in computer science applications of discrete mathematics are the bases 2 (called binary), 8 (called octal) and 16 (called hexadecimal, or simply hex). Thus the decimal number 75 would be 1001011_2 (binary), 113_8 (octal) and $4B_{16}$ in hex. Note that for hex numbers, symbols will be needed to represent hex digits for 10, 11, 12, 13, 14 and 15. The letters A, B, C, D, E and F are traditionally used for these digits.

27.4 Exercises

Exercise 27.1. Convert to decimal: 21_3 , 321_4 , 4321_5 , and FED_{16} .

Exercise 27.2. Convert the decimal integer 11714 to bases 2, 6, and 16. Remember to use A, B, \dots, F to represent base 16 digits from 10 to 15, if needed.

Exercise 27.3. Complete the following base 7 multiplication table.

\times	1	2	3	4	5	6
1	1	2	3	4	5	6
2	2	4				
3			2			
4				2		
5						
6						

Exercise 27.4. Make base 6 addition and multiplication tables similar to the base 7 multiplication table of exercise 27.3.

Exercise 27.5. (For those with a sweet tooth for punishment!) Use the Euclidean algorithm to compute $\gcd(5122_7, 1312_7)$ without converting the numbers to base 10.

The Two Fundamental Counting Principles

THE NEXT FEW CHAPTERS WILL DEAL with the topic of **combinatorics**: the art of counting. By counting we mean determining the number of different ways of arranging objects in certain patterns or the number of ways of carrying out a sequence of tasks. For example, suppose we want to count the number of ways of making a bit string of length two. Such a problem is small enough that the possible arrangements can be counted by *brute force*. In other words, we can simply make a list of all the possibilities: 00, 01, 10, 11. So the answer is four. If the problem were to determine the number of bit strings of length fifty, the brute force method loses a lot of its appeal. For problems where brute force counting is not a reasonable alternative, there are a few principles we can apply to aid in the counting. In fact, there are just two basic principles on which all counting ultimately rests.

Throughout this chapter, all sets mentioned will be finite sets, and if A is a set, $|A|$ will denote the number of elements in A .

28.1 The sum rule

The **sum rule** says that if the sets A and B are disjoint, then

$$|A \cup B| = |A| + |B|.$$

Example 28.1. For example, if $A = \{a, b, c\}$ and $B = \{j, k, l, m, n\}$, then $|A| = 3$, $|B| = 5$, and, sure enough,

$$|A \cup B| = |\{a, b, c, j, k, l, m, n\}| = 8 = 3 + 5.$$

Care must be used when applying the sum principle that the sets are disjoint. If $A = \{a, b, c\}$ and $B = \{b, c, d\}$, then $|A \cup B| = 4$, and not 6.



Example 28.2. As another example of the sum principle, if we have a collection of 3 dogs and 5 cats, then we can select one of the animals in 8 ways.

28.1.1 Counting two independent tasks

The sum principle is often expressed in different language: If we can do task 1 in m ways and task 2 in n ways, and the tasks are *independent* (meaning that both tasks cannot be done at the same time), then there are $m + n$ ways to do one of the two tasks. The independence of the tasks is the analog of the disjointness of the sets in the set version of the sum rule.

A serious type of error is trying to use the sum rule for tasks that are not independent. For instance, suppose we want to know *in how many different ways we can select either a deuce or a six from an ordinary deck of 52 cards*. We could let the first task be the process of selecting a deuce from the deck. That task can be done in 4 ways since there are 4 deuces in the deck. For the second task, we will take the operation of selecting a six from the deck. Again, there are 4 ways to accomplish that task. Now these tasks are independent since we cannot simultaneously pick a deuce and a six from the deck. So, according to the sum rule, there are $4 + 4 = 8$ ways of selecting one card from a deck, and having that card be either a deuce or a six.



Now consider the similar sounding question: *In how many ways can we select either a deuce or a diamond from a deck of 52 cards?* We could let the first task again be the operation of selecting a deuce from the deck, with 4 ways to carry out that task. And we could let the second task be the operation of selecting a diamond from the deck,

with 13 ways to accomplish that. But in this case, the answer to the question is not $4 + 13 = 17$, since these tasks are not independent. It is possible to select a card that is both a deuce and a diamond. So the sum rule cannot be used. What is the correct answer? Well, there are 13 diamonds, and there are 3 deuces besides the two of diamonds, and so there are actually 16 cards in the deck that are either a deuce or a diamond. That means there are 16 ways to select a card from a deck and have it turn out to be either a deuce or a diamond.

28.1.2 Extended sum rule

The sum rule can be extended to the case of more than two sets (or more than two tasks): If $A_1, A_2, A_3, \dots, A_n$ is a collection of *pairwise disjoint* sets, then $|A_1 \cup A_2 \cup A_3 \cup \dots \cup A_n| = |A_1| + |A_2| + |A_3| + \dots + |A_n|$. Or, in terms of tasks: If task 1 can be done in k_1 ways, and task 2 in k_2 , and task 3 in k_3 ways, and so on, until task n can be done in k_n ways, and if the tasks are all independent¹, then we can do one task in $k_1 + k_2 + k_3 + \dots + k_n$ ways.

¹ They must be **pairwise** independent!

Example 28.3. For example, if we own three cars, two bikes, a motorcycle, four pairs of roller skates, and two scooters, then we can select one of these modes of transportation in $3 + 2 + 1 + 4 + 2 = 12$ ways.

28.1.3 Sum rule and the logical or

The sum rule is related to the logical connective *or*. That is reasonable since the sum rule counts the number of elements in the set $A \cup B = \{x \mid x \in A \text{ or } x \in B\}$. In terms of tasks, the sum rule counts the number of ways to do either task 1 or task 2. Generally speaking, when the word *or* occurs in a counting problem, the sum rule is the tool to use.

But, verify independence!

28.2 The product rule

The logical connective *and* is related to the second fundamental counting principle: the **product rule**. The product rule says:

$$|A \times B| = |A| \cdot |B|.$$

An explanation of this is that $A \times B$ consists of all ordered pairs (a, b) where $a \in A$ and $b \in B$. There are $|A|$ choices for a and then $|B|$ choices for b .

28.2.1 Counting two sequential tasks: logical and

In terms of tasks, the product rule says that if task 1 can be done in m ways and task 2 can be done in n ways after task 1 has been done, then there are mn ways to do both tasks, the first then the second. Here the relation with the logical connective *and* is also obvious. We need to do task 1 and task 2. Generally speaking, the appearance of *and* in a counting problem suggests the product rule will come into play.

28.2.2 Extended product rule

As with the sum rule, the product rule can be used for situations with more than two sets or more than two tasks. In terms of sets, the product rule reads $|A_1 \times A_2 \times \cdots \times A_n| = |A_1| \cdot |A_2| \cdots |A_n|$. In terms of tasks, it reads, if task 1 can be done in k_1 ways, and for each of those ways, task 2 can be done in k_2 ways, and for each of those ways, task 3 can be done in k_3 ways, and so on, until for each of those ways, task n can be done in k_n ways, then we can do task 1 followed by task 2 followed by task 3, etc, followed by task n in $k_1 k_2 k_3 \cdots k_n$ ways. That sounds worse than it really is.

Example 28.4. *How many bit strings are there of length five?*

Solution. *We can think of task 1 as filling in the first (right hand) position, task 2 as filling in the second position, and so on. We can argue that we have two ways to do task 1, and then two ways to do task 2, and then two ways to do task 3, and then two ways to do task 4, and then two ways to do task 5. So, by the product rule, there are $2 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 = 2^5 = 32$ ways to do all five tasks, and so there are 32 bit strings of length five.*

The same reasoning shows that, in general, there are 2^n bit strings of length n .

Example 28.5. *Suppose we are buying a car with five choices for the exterior color and three choices for the interior color. Then there is a total of $3 \cdot 5 = 15$ possible color combinations that we can choose from. The first task is to select an exterior color, and there are 5 ways to do that. The second task*

is to select an interior color, and there are 3 ways to do that. So the product rule says there are 15 ways total to do both tasks. Notice that there is no requirement of independence of tasks when using the product rule. However, also notice that the number of ways of doing the second task **must** be the same no matter what choice is made for doing the first task.

Example 28.6. For another, slightly more complicated, example of the product rule in action, suppose we wanted to make a two-digit number using the digits 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9. How many different such two-digit numbers could we form? Let's make the first task filling in the left digit, and the second task filling in the right digit. There are 9 ways to do the first task. And, no matter how we do the first task, there are 9 ways to do the second task as well. So, by the product rule, there are $9 \cdot 9 = 81$ possible such two-digit numbers.

Example 28.7. Now, let's change the problem in example 28.6 a little bit. Suppose we wanted two-digit numbers made up of those same nine digits, but we do not want to use a digit more than once in any of the numbers. In other words, 37 and 91 are OK, but we do not want to count 44 as a possibility. We can still make the first task filling in the left digit, and the second task filling in the right digit. And, as before, there are 9 ways to do the first task. But now, once the first task has been done, there are only 8 ways to do the second task, since the digit used in the first task is no longer available for doing the second task. For instance, if the digit 3 was selected in the first task, then for the second task, we will have to choose from the eight digits 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9. So, according to the product rule, there are $9 \cdot 8 = 72$ ways of building such a number.

No matter in what way the first task was done, there are always 8 ways to to the second task in sequence. What if you chose to pick the second digit first?

Example 28.8. Just for fun, here is another way to see the answer in example 28.7 is 72. We saw above that there are 81 ways to make a two-digit number when we allow repeated digits. But there are 9 two digit numbers that do have repeated digits (namely 11, 22, \dots , 99). That means there must be $81 - 9 = 72$ two-digit numbers without repeated digits.

28.2.3 Counting by subtraction: Good = Total - Bad

The trick we used in example 28.8 looks like a new counting principle, but it is really the sum rule being applied in a tricky way. Here's

the idea. Call the set of all the two-digit numbers (not using 0) T , call the set with no repeated digits N , and call the set with repeated digits R . By the sum rule, $|T| = |N| + |R|$, so $|N| = |T| - |R|$. This is a very common trick.

Generally, suppose we are interested in counting some arrangements, let's call them the *Good* arrangements. But it is not easy for some reason to count the *Good* arrangements directly. So, instead, we count the *Total* number of arrangements, and subtract the number of *Bad* arrangements:

$$\text{Good} = \text{Total} - \text{Bad}.$$

Let's have another example of this trick.

Example 28.9. *By a word of length five, we will mean any string of five letters from the 26 letter alphabet. How many words contain at least one vowel. The vowels are: a,e,i,o,u.*

By the product rule, there is a total of 26^5 possible words of length five. The bad words are made up of only the 21 non-vowels. So, by the sum rule, the number of good words is $26^5 - 21^5$.

28.3 Using both the sum and product rules

As in example 28.9, most interesting counting problems involve a combination of both the sum and product rules.

Example 28.10. *Suppose we wanted to count the number of different possible bit strings of length five that start with either three 0's or with two 1's. Recall that a bit string is a list of 0's and 1's, and the length of the bit string is the total number of 0's and 1's in the list. So, here are some bit strings that satisfy the stated conditions: 00001, 11111, 11011, and 00010. On the other hand, the bit strings 00110 and 10101 do not meet the required condition.*

To do this problem, let's first count the number of good bit strings that start with three 0's. In this case, we can think of the construction of such a bit string as doing five tasks, one after the other, filling in the leftmost bit, then the next one, then the third, the next, and finally the last bit. There is only one way to do the first three tasks, since we need to fill in 0's in the first three positions. But there are two ways to do the last two tasks, and

so, according to the product rule there are $1 \cdot 1 \cdot 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 = 4$ bit strings of length five starting with three 0's. Using the same reasoning, there are $1 \cdot 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 = 8$ bit strings of length five starting with two 1's. Now, a bit string cannot both start with three 0's and also with two 1's, (in other words, starting with three 0's and starting with two 1's are independent). And so, according to the sum rule, there will be a total of $4 + 8 = 12$ bit strings of length five starting with either three 0's or two 1's.

Example 28.11. How many words of six letters (repeats OK) contain exactly one vowel?

Solution. Let's break the construction of a good word down into a number of tasks.

Task 1: Select a spot for the vowel: 6 choices.

Task 2: Select a vowel for that spot: 5 choices.

Task 3: Fill first empty spot with a non-vowel: 21 choices

Task 4: Fill next empty spot with a non-vowel: 21 choices

Task 5: Fill next empty spot with a non-vowel: 21 choices

Task 6: Fill next empty spot with a non-vowel: 21 choices

Task 7: Fill last empty spot with a non-vowel: 21 choices

By the product rule, the number of good words is $6 \cdot 5 \cdot 21^5$.

Example 28.12. Count the number of strings on license plates which either consist of three capital English letters, followed by three digits, or consist of two digits followed by four capital English letters.

Solution. Let A be the set of strings which consist of three capital English letters followed by three digits, and B be the set of strings which consist of two digits followed by four capital English letters. By the product rule $|A| = 26^3 \cdot 10^3$ since there are 26 capital English letters and 10 digits. Also by the product rule $|B| = 10^2 \cdot 26^4$. Since $A \cap B = \emptyset$, by the sum rule the answer is $26^3 \cdot 10^3 + 10^2 \cdot 26^4$.

28.4 *Answer form \longleftrightarrow solution method*

In the previous examples we might continue on with the arithmetic. For instance, in the last, example 28.12, using the distributive law on our answer to factor out common terms we see $|A \cup B| = 10^2 \cdot 26^3(10 + 26)$ is an equivalent answer. This, in turn, simplifies to $|A \cup B| = 10^2 \cdot 26^3 \cdot 36$, and that gives

$$|A \cup B| = 100 \cdot 17576 \cdot 36 = 63,273,600.$$

Of all of these answers the most valuable is probably $26^3 \cdot 10^3 + 10^2 \cdot 26^4$, since **the form of the answer is indicative of the manner of solution**. We can readily observe that the sum rule was applied to two disjoint subcases. For each subcase the product rule was applied to compute the intermediate answer. As a general rule, answers to counting problems should be left in this uncomputed form.

The next most useful solution is the last one. When we have an answer of this form we can use it to consider whether or not our answer makes sense intuitively. For example if we knew that A and B both were subsets of a set of cardinality 450 and we computed that $|A \cup B| > 450$, this would indicate that we made an error, either in the logic of our counting, or in arithmetic, or both.

28.5 Exercises

Exercise 28.1. To meet the science requirement a student must take one of the following courses: a choice of 5 biology courses, 4 physics courses, or 6 chemistry courses. In how many ways can the one course be selected?

Exercise 28.2. Using the data of problem 1, a student has decided to take one biology, one physics, and one chemistry course. How many different such selections are possible?

Exercise 28.3. A code word is either a sequence of three letters followed by two digits or two letters followed by three digits. (Unless otherwise indicated, letters will mean letters chosen from the usual 26-letter alphabet and digits are selected from $\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9\}$.) How many different code words are possible?

Exercise 28.4. How many words of length six are there if letters may be repeated? (Examples: BBBXBB, ABATBC are OK).

Exercise 28.5. How many words of length six are there if letters may not be repeated? (Examples: BBBBXB, ABATJC are bad but ABXHYP is OK).

Exercise 28.6. A multiple choice test contains 10 questions. There are four possible answers for each question.

- (a) How many ways can a student complete the test if every question must be answered?
- (b) How many ways can a student complete the test if questions can be left unanswered?

Exercise 28.7. How many binary strings of length less than or equal to nine are there?

Exercise 28.8. How many eight-letter words contain at least one A?

Exercise 28.9. How many seven-letter words contain at most one A?

Exercise 28.10. How many nine-letter words contain at least two A's?

Permutations and Combinations

BY A **permutation** OF A SET OF OBJECTS we mean a listing of the objects of the set in a specific order. For example, there are six possible permutations of the set $A = \{a, b, c\}$. They are

$$abc, acb, bac, bca, cab, cba.$$

The product rule explains why there are six permutations of A : there are 3 choices for the first letter, once that choice has been made there are 2 choices for the second letter, and finally that leaves 1 choice for the last letter. So the total number of permutations is $3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 = 6$.

29.1 *Permutations*

A set with n elements is called an n -set. We have just shown that a 3-set has 6 permutations. The same reasoning shows that an n -set has $n \cdot (n - 1) \cdot (n - 2) \cdots 2 \cdot 1 = n!$ permutations. So the total number of different ways to arrange a deck of cards is $52!$, a number with 68 digits: [8065817517094387857166063685640376697528950544088327782400000000000](#).

Instead of forming a permutation of all the elements of an n -set, we might consider the problem of first selecting some of the elements of the set, say r of them, and then forming a permutation of just those r elements. In that case we say we have formed an r -**permutation** of the n -set. All the possible 2-permutations of the 4-set

$A = \{a, b, c, d\}$ are

$ab, ac, ad, ba, bc, bd, ca, cb, cd, da, db, dc$

Hence, there are twelve 2-permutations of a 4-set.

Notation. In general, $P(n, r)$ denotes the number of different r -permutations of an n -set.

The number of 2-permutations of a 4-set is $P(4, 2) = 12$.

The product rule provides a simple formula for $P(n, r)$. There are n choices for the first element, and once that choice has been made, there are $n - 1$ choices for the second element, then $n - 2$ for the third, and so on, until finally, there are $n - (r - 1) = n - r + 1$ choices for the r^{th} element. So $P(n, r) = n(n - 1) \cdot \dots \cdot (n - r + 1)$.

That expression can be written more neatly as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} P(n, r) &= n(n - 1) \cdot \dots \cdot (n - r + 1) \\ &= \frac{n(n - 1) \cdot \dots \cdot (n - r + 1)(n - r)(n - r - 1) \cdot \dots \cdot 2 \cdot 1}{(n - r)(n - r - 1) \cdot \dots \cdot 2 \cdot 1} = \frac{n!}{(n - r)!} \end{aligned}$$

And, that is the way to remember the formula:

$$P(n, r) = \frac{n!}{(n - r)!}.$$

Example 29.1. As an example, the number of ways of selecting a president, vice-president, secretary, and treasurer from a group of 20 people is $P(20, 4)$ (assuming no person can hold more than one office). If you want the actual numerical value, it is $\frac{20!}{(20 - 4)!} = 20 \cdot 19 \cdot 18 \cdot 17 = 116280$, but the best way to write the answer in most cases would be just $P(20, 4) = \frac{20!}{16!}$, and skip the numerical computations.

Example 29.2. How many one-to-one functions are there from a 5-set to a 7-set?

While this question doesn't sound on the surface like a problem of permutations, it really is. Suppose the 5-set is $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$ and the 7-set is $B = \{a, b, c, d, e, f, g\}$. One example of a one-to-one function from A to B would be $f(1) = a, f(2) = c, f(3) = g, f(4) = b, f(5) = d$. But, if we agree to think of the elements of A listed in their natural order, we could specify that function more briefly as $acgbd$. In other words, each one-to-one function specifies a 5-permutation of B , and, conversely, each 5-permutation of B specifies a one-to-one function. So the number of one-to-one functions from a 5-set to a 7-set is equal to the number of 5-permutations of a 7-set, and that is $P(7, 5) = 2520$.

The same reasoning shows there are $P(n, r)$ one-to-one functions from an r -set to an n -set.

Example 29.3. Here are a few easily seen values of $P(n, r)$:

$$(1) P(n, n) = n!$$

$$(2) P(n, 1) = n$$

$$(3) P(n, 0) = 1$$

$$(4) P(n, r) = 0 \text{ if } r > n$$

There is only one 0-permutation, the one with no symbols!

There are no permutations with length greater than n of n objects.

29.2 Combinations

When forming permutations, the order in which the elements are listed is important. But there are many cases when we are interested only in which elements are selected and we do not care about the order. For example, when playing poker, a hand consists of five cards dealt from a standard 52-card deck. The order in which the cards arrive in a hand does not matter, only the final selection of the five cards is important. When order is not important, the selection is called a combination rather than a permutation. More carefully, an **r -combination** from an n -set is an r -subset of the n -set. In other words an r -combination of an n -set is an unordered selection of r distinct elements from the n -set.

Example 29.4. The 2-combinations of the 5-set $\{a, b, c, d, e\}$ are

$$\{a, b\}, \{a, c\}, \{a, d\}, \{a, e\}, \{b, c\}, \\ \{b, d\}, \{b, e\}, \{c, d\}, \{c, e\}, \{d, e\}.$$

Notation. The number of r -combinations from an n -set is denoted by $C(n, r)$ or, sometimes, $\binom{n}{r}$.

Example 29.4 shows that

$$C(5, 2) = \binom{5}{2} = 10.$$

Example 29.5. Here are a few easily seen values of $C(n, r)$:

$$(1) C(n, n) = 1$$

$$(2) C(n, 1) = n$$

$$(3) C(n, 0) = 1$$

$$(4) C(n, r) = 0 \text{ if } r > n$$

There is only one 0-subset, the empty set.

There are no subsets of an n -set with size greater than n .

There is a compact formula for $C(n, r)$ which can be derived using the product rule in a sort of back-handed way. An r -permutation of an n -set can be built using a sequence of two tasks. First, select r elements of the n -set. There are $C(n, r)$ ways to do that task. Next, arrange those r elements in some specific order. There are $r!$ ways to do that task. So, according to the product rule, the number of r -permutations of an n -set will be $C(n, r)r!$. However, we know that the number of r -permutations of an n -set are $P(n, r)$. So we may conclude that $P(n, r) = C(n, r)r!$, or, rearranging that, we see

$$C(n, r) = \binom{n}{r} = \frac{P(n, r)}{r!} = \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!}$$

Example 29.6. *Suppose we have a club with 20 members. If we want to select a committee of 4 members, then there are*

$$C(20, 4) = \frac{20!}{4!(20-4)!} = \frac{20 \cdot 19 \cdot 18 \cdot 17}{4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1} = 4845$$

ways to do this since the order of people on the committee doesn't matter.

Compare this answer with example 29.1 where we counted the number of possible selections¹ for president, vice-president, secretary, and treasurer from the group of 20. The difference between the two cases is that the earlier example is a question about permutations (order matters), whereas this example is a question about combinations (order does not matter).

¹ $P(5, 4) = 20!/16! = 116280$ ways

29.3 Exercises

Exercise 29.1. *In how many ways can the 26 volumes (labeled A through Z) of the Encyclopedia of PseudoScience be placed on a shelf?*

Exercise 29.2. *In how many ways can those same 26 volumes be placed on a shelf if superstitions demand the volumes labeled with vowels must be adjacent? In how many ways can they be placed on the shelf obeying the conflicting superstition that volumes labeled with vowels cannot touch each other?*

Exercise 29.3. *For those same 26 volumes, how many ways can they be placed in a two shelf bookcase if volumes A-M go on the top shelf and N-Z go on the bottom shelf?*

Exercise 29.4. *In how many ways can seven men and four women sit in a row if the men must sit together?*

Exercise 29.5. *20 players are to be divided into two 10-man teams. In how many ways can that be done?*

Exercise 29.6. *A lottery ticket consists of five different integers selected from 1 to 99. How many different lottery tickets are possible? How many tickets would you need to buy to have a one-in-a-million chance of winning by matching all five randomly*

Exercise 29.7. *A committee of size six is selected from a group of nine clowns and thirteen lion tamers.*

- (a) *How many different committees are possible?*
- (b) *How many committees are possible if there must be exactly two clowns on the committee?*
- (c) *How many committees are possible if lion tamers must outnumber clowns on the committee?*

The Binomial Theorem and Pascal's Triangle

THE QUANTITY $C(n, k)$ IS ALSO WRITTEN as $\binom{n}{k}$, and called a *binomial coefficient*. It gives the number of k -subsets of an n -set, or, equivalently, it gives the number of ways of selecting k items from n items.

30.1 Combinatorial proof

Facts involving the binomial coefficients can be proved algebraically, using the formula $\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!}$. But often the same facts can be proved much more neatly by recognizing $\binom{n}{k}$ gives the number of k -subsets of an n -set. This second sort of proof is called a combinatorial proof. Here is an example of each type of proof.

Theorem 30.1 (Pascal's Identity). *Let n and k be non-negative integers, then*

$$\binom{n+1}{k} = \binom{n}{k-1} + \binom{n}{k}.$$

Proof. (an algebraic proof)

$$\begin{aligned}
 \binom{n}{k-1} + \binom{n}{k} &= \frac{n!}{(k-1)!(n-(k-1))!} + \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!} \\
 &= \frac{n!}{(k-1)!(n-k+1)!} + \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!} \\
 &= \frac{n!}{(k-1)!(n-k)!} \left(\frac{1}{n-k+1} + \frac{1}{k} \right) \\
 &= \frac{n!}{(k-1)!(n-k)!} \left(\frac{k}{k(n-k+1)} + \frac{n-k+1}{k(n-k+1)} \right) \\
 &= \frac{n!}{(k-1)!(n-k)!} \frac{k+(n-k+1)}{k(n-k+1)} \\
 &= \frac{n!}{(k-1)!(n-k)!} \frac{n+1}{k(n-k+1)} \\
 &= \frac{n!(n+1)}{(k-1)!k(n-k)!(n-k+1)} \\
 &= \frac{(n+1)!}{k!(n+1-k)!} \\
 &= \binom{n+1}{k}
 \end{aligned}$$

♣

Proof. (a combinatorial proof) Let S be a set with $n+1$ elements. Select one particular element $a \in S$. There are two ways to produce a subset of S of size k . We can include a in the subset, and toss in $k-1$ of the remaining n elements of S . There are $\binom{n}{k-1}$ to do that. Or, we can avoid a , and choose all k elements from the other n elements of S . There are $\binom{n}{k}$ ways to do that. So, according to the sum rule, there is a total of $\binom{n}{k-1} + \binom{n}{k}$ subsets of size k of S . But we know there are $\binom{n+1}{k}$ subsets of size k of S . So it must be that $\binom{n+1}{k} = \binom{n}{k-1} + \binom{n}{k}$. ♣

30.1.1 Constructing combinatorial proofs

The idea of a combinatorial proof is to ask a counting problem that can be answered in two different ways, and then conclude the two answers must be equal. In the proof above, we asked how many k -subsets there are of an $(n+1)$ -set. We provided an argument to show two answers were correct: $\binom{n+1}{k}$ and $\binom{n}{k-1} + \binom{n}{k}$, and

so we could conclude the two answers must be equal:

$$\binom{n+1}{k} = \binom{n}{k-1} + \binom{n}{k}.$$

As in the combinatorial proof of Pascal's Identity 30.1, such arguments can be much less work, far less tedious, and much more illuminating, than algebraic proofs. Unfortunately, they can also be much more difficult to discover since it is necessary to dream up a good counting problem that will have as answers the two expressions we are trying to show are equal, and there is no algorithm for coming up with such a suitable counting problem.

Example 30.2. Give a combinatorial¹ proof of $\binom{n}{k} = \binom{n}{n-k}$.

Solution. To provide a combinatorial proof, we ask how many ways are there to grab k elements of an n -set?. One answer of course is $\binom{n}{k}$. But here is a second way to view the problem. We can select k elements of an n -set by deciding on $n-k$ elements **not** to pick. Since there are $\binom{n}{n-k}$ ways to select the $n-k$ not to pick, there must be $\binom{n}{n-k}$ ways to select k elements of an n -set. Since the two answers must be equal we conclude that $\binom{n}{k} = \binom{n}{n-k}$. ♣

Example 30.3. Give a combinatorial proof of **Vandermonde's Identity**:

$$\binom{n+m}{k} = \binom{n}{0}\binom{m}{k} + \binom{n}{1}\binom{m}{k-1} + \binom{n}{2}\binom{m}{k-2} + \cdots + \binom{n}{k}\binom{m}{0}.$$

Solution. Consider the set $\{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n, b_1, b_2, \dots, b_m\}$ of $n+m$ elements. We ask, how many k -subsets does the set have?.

One answer of course is $\binom{n+m}{k}$.

But here's another way to answer the question:

we can select 0 of the a 's and k of the b 's. There are $\binom{n}{0}\binom{m}{k}$ ways to do that.

Or we select 1 of the a 's and $k-1$ of the b 's. There are $\binom{n}{1}\binom{m}{k-1}$ ways to do that.

Or we select 2 of the a 's and $k-2$ of the b 's. There are $\binom{n}{2}\binom{m}{k-2}$ ways to do that.

¹ An algebraic proof of this identity is absolutely trivial:

$$\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \binom{n}{n-k} &= \frac{n!}{(n-k)!(n-(n-k))!} \\ &= \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we see that the two expressions are indeed equal.

And so on, until we reach the option of selecting k of the a 's and 0 of the b 's. There are $\binom{n}{k}\binom{m}{0}$ ways to do that.

By the sum rule, it follows that another way to count the number of k -subsets is

$$\binom{n}{0}\binom{m}{k} + \binom{n}{1}\binom{m}{k-1} + \binom{n}{2}\binom{m}{k-2} + \cdots + \binom{n}{k}\binom{m}{0}$$

and that proves Vandermonde's Identity. ♣

30.2 Pascal's Triangle

The binomial coefficients are so named because they appear when a binomial $x + y$ is raised to an integer power ≥ 0 . To appreciate the connection, let's look at a table of the binomial coefficients $\binom{n}{k}$. The table is arranged in rows starting with row $n = 0$, and within each row, the entries are arranged from left to right for $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n$. The result, called Pascal's Triangle, is shown in figure 30.1.

Filling in the numerical values for the binomial coefficients gives the table shown in figure 30.2.

Note that we number the rows starting with 0. We already know quite a bit about the entries in Pascal's Triangle. Since $\binom{n}{0} = \binom{n}{n} = 1$ for all n , each row begins and ends with a 1. From the symmetry formula $\binom{n}{k} = \binom{n}{n-k}$, the rows read the same in both directions. By Pascal's Identity, each entry in a row is the sum of the two entries diagonally above it. That last fact makes it easy to add new rows to Pascal's Triangle.

The numbers in the first, second, and third rows of Pascal's triangle probably seem familiar. In fact, we see that

$$\begin{aligned}(x + y)^0 &= 1 \\(x + y)^1 &= x + y = 1 \cdot x + 1 \cdot y \\(x + y)^2 &= x^2 + 2xy + y^2 = 1 \cdot x^2 + 2 \cdot xy + 1 \cdot y^2 \\(x + y)^3 &= x^3 + 3x^2y + 3xy^2 + y^3 = 1 \cdot x^3 + 3 \cdot x^2y + 3 \cdot xy^2 + 1 \cdot y^3\end{aligned}$$

Row 0:				$\binom{0}{0}$				
Row 1:			$\binom{1}{0}$	$\binom{1}{1}$				
Row 2:			$\binom{2}{0}$	$\binom{2}{1}$	$\binom{2}{2}$			
Row 3:			$\binom{3}{0}$	$\binom{3}{1}$	$\binom{3}{2}$	$\binom{3}{3}$		
Row 4:			$\binom{4}{0}$	$\binom{4}{1}$	$\binom{4}{2}$	$\binom{4}{3}$	$\binom{4}{4}$	
Row 5:			$\binom{5}{0}$	$\binom{5}{1}$	$\binom{5}{2}$	$\binom{5}{3}$	$\binom{5}{4}$	$\binom{5}{5}$
			⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮

Figure 30.1: Pascal's Triangle

Row 0:					1				
Row 1:				1	1				
Row 2:				1	2	1			
Row 3:				1	3	3	1		
Row 4:				1	4	6	4	1	
Row 5:				1	5	10	10	5	1
				⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮

Figure 30.2: Pascal's Triangle (numeric)

The coefficients in these binomial expansions are exactly the entries in the corresponding rows of Pascal's Triangle. This even works for the 0^{th} row: $(x + y)^0 = 1$.

30.3 The Binomial Theorem

The fact that the coefficients in the expansion of the binomial $(x + y)^n$ (where $n \geq 0$ is an integer) can be read off from the n^{th} row of Pascal's Triangle is called the Binomial Theorem. We will give two proofs of this theorem, one by induction, and the other a combinatorial proof.

Theorem 30.4 (The Binomial Theorem). *When n is a non-negative integer and $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$*

$$(x + y)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n-k}.$$

Proof. (by induction on n) When $n = 0$ the result is clear. So suppose that for some $n \geq 0$ we have $(x + y)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n-k}$, for any $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$.

Then, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (x + y)^{n+1} &= (x + y)^n(x + y), \\ &= \left[\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n-k} \right] (x + y), \text{ by inductive hypothesis,} \\ &= \left[\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x^{k+1} y^{n-k} \right] + \left[\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n+1-k} \right], \\ &= \binom{n}{n} x^{n+1} + \left[\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \binom{n}{k} x^{k+1} y^{n-k} \right] + \left[\sum_{k=1}^n \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n+1-k} \right] + \binom{n}{0} y^{n+1}, \\ &= \binom{n}{n} x^{n+1} + \left[\sum_{l=1}^n \binom{n}{l-1} x^l y^{n-(l-1)} \right] + \left[\sum_{k=1}^n \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n+1-k} \right] + \binom{n}{0} y^{n+1} \\ &= \binom{n}{n} x^{n+1} + \left[\sum_{l=1}^n \binom{n}{l-1} x^l y^{n+1-l} \right] + \left[\sum_{k=1}^n \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n+1-k} \right] + \binom{n}{0} y^{n+1} \\ &= \binom{n}{n} x^{n+1} + \left[\sum_{k=1}^n \left[\binom{n}{k-1} + \binom{n}{k} \right] x^k y^{n+1-k} \right] + \binom{n}{0} y^{n+1} \\ &= \binom{n+1}{n+1} x^{n+1} + \left[\sum_{k=1}^n \binom{n+1}{k} x^k y^{n+1-k} \right] + \binom{n+1}{0} y^{n+1}, \text{ by Pascal's identity,} \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{n+1} \binom{n+1}{k} x^k y^{n+1-k}. \end{aligned}$$



Now, let's look at a combinatorial proof of the Binomial Theorem.

Proof. When the binomial $(x + y)^n = (x + y)(x + y)(x + y) \cdots (x + y)$ is expanded, the terms are produced by selecting either the x or the y from each of the n factors $x + y$ appearing on the right side of the equation. The number of ways of selecting exactly k x 's from the n available is $\binom{n}{k}$, and so that will be the coefficient of the term $x^k y^{n-k}$ in the expansion. ♣

Isn't this amazing!

Example 30.5. The coefficient of $x^7 y^3$ in the expansion of $(x + y)^{10}$ is

$$\binom{10}{7} = \frac{10!}{7!3!} = \frac{10 \cdot 9 \cdot 8}{1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3} = 120.$$

Example 30.6. The coefficient of $x^7 y^3$ in the expansion of $(2x - 3y)^{10}$ is

$$\binom{10}{7} 2^7 (-3)^3 = \frac{10!}{7!3!} 2^7 (-3)^3 = -\frac{10 \cdot 9 \cdot 8}{1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3} 2^7 3^3 = -120 \cdot 128 \cdot 27 = -414720.$$

From the binomial theorem we can derive facts such as

Theorem 30.7. A finite set with n elements has 2^n subsets.

Proof. By the sum rule the number of subsets of an n -set is

$$\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} 1^k 1^{n-k}.$$

By the Binomial Theorem $\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} 1^k 1^{n-k} = (1 + 1)^n = 2^n$. ♣

Theorem 30.8. If $n \geq 1$, then

$$\binom{n}{0} - \binom{n}{1} + \binom{n}{2} - \cdots + (-1)^n \binom{n}{n} = 0.$$

Proof. By the Binomial Theorem,

$$\binom{n}{0} - \binom{n}{1} + \binom{n}{2} - \cdots + (-1)^n \binom{n}{n} = (1 - 1)^n = 0.$$

♣

30.4 Exercises

Exercise 30.1. Determine the sixth row of Pascal's Triangle.

Exercise 30.2. Determine the coefficient of x^3y^7 in the expansion of $(3x - 2y)^{10}$.

Exercise 30.3. Give an algebraic proof that $\binom{2n}{2} = 2\binom{n}{2} + n^2$.

Exercise 30.4. Give a combinatorial proof that $\binom{2n}{2} = 2\binom{n}{2} + n^2$. Hint: How many ways are there to select a 2-subset of $\{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n, b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n\}$?

Exercise 30.5. Give a combinatorial proof that $\binom{3m}{3} = \binom{m}{3} + 2m\binom{m}{2} + m\binom{2m}{2} + \binom{2m}{3}$.

Exercise 30.6. Using the same reasoning as in the combinatorial proof of the Binomial Theorem, determine the coefficient of $x^4y^5z^6$ in the expansion of $(x + y + z)^{15}$.

Exercise 30.7. Show that if p is a prime and $0 < k < p$, then p divides $\binom{p}{k}$. Hint: When $\binom{p}{k}$ is written out, how many times does p occur as a factor of the numerator and how many times as a factor of the denominator?

Inclusion-Exclusion Counting

THE SUM RULE SAYS that if A and B are disjoint sets, then $|A \cup B| = |A| + |B|$. If the sets are not disjoint, then this formula over counts the number of elements in the union of A and B . For example, if $A = \{a, b, c\}$ and $B = \{c, d, e\}$, then

$$|A \cup B| = |\{a, b, c\} \cup \{c, d, e\}| = |\{a, b, c, d, e\}| = 5.$$

So, we see that $|A \cup B| \neq 3 + 3 = |A| + |B|$.

31.1 Inclusion-Exclusion principle

The correct way to count the number of elements in $|A \cup B|$ when A and B might not be disjoint is via the **inclusion-exclusion** formula. To derive this formula, notice that $A \cup B = (A - B) \cup B$, and that the sets $A - B$ and B are disjoint. So we can apply the sum rule to conclude

$$|A \cup B| = |(A - B) \cup B| = |A - B| + |B|.$$

Next, notice that $A = (A - B) \cup (A \cap B)$, and the two sets on the right are disjoint. So, using the sum rule, we get

$$|A| = |(A - B) \cup (A \cap B)| = |A - B| + |A \cap B|,$$

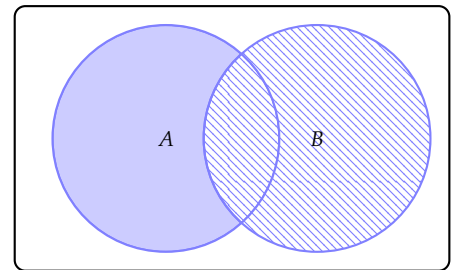


Figure 31.1: $A \cup B = (A - B) \cup B$

which we can rearrange as

$$|A - B| = |A| - |A \cap B|.$$

So, replacing $|A - B|$ by $|A| - |A \cap B|$ in the formula $|A \cup B| = |(A - B) \cup B| = |A - B| + |B|$, we end up with the **inclusion-exclusion** formula:

$$|A \cup B| = |A| + |B| - |A \cap B|.$$

In words, to count the number of items in the union of two sets, include one for everything in the first set, and include one for everything in the second set, then exclude one for each element in the overlap of the two sets (since those elements will have been counted twice).

Example 31.1. *How many students are there in a discrete math class if 15 students are computer science majors, 7 are math majors, and 3 are double majors in math and computer science?*

Solution. Let C denote the subset of computer science majors in the class, and M denote the math majors. Then $|C| = 15$, $|M| = 7$ and $|C \cap M| = 3$. So by the principle of inclusion-exclusion there are $|C| + |M| - |C \cap M| = 15 + 7 - 3 = 19$ students in the class. ♣

Example 31.2. *How many integers between 1 and 1000 are divisible by either 7 or 11?*

Solution. Let S denote the set of integers between 1 and 1000 divisible by 7, and E denote the set of integers between 1 and 1000 divisible by 11. We need to count the number of integers in $S \cup E$. By the principle of inclusion-exclusion, we have

$$\begin{aligned} |S \cup E| &= |S| + |E| - |S \cap E| = \left\lfloor \frac{1000}{7} \right\rfloor + \left\lfloor \frac{1000}{11} \right\rfloor - \left\lfloor \frac{1000}{77} \right\rfloor \\ &= 142 + 90 - 12 = 120. \end{aligned}$$

♣

31.2 Extended inclusion-exclusion principle

The inclusion-exclusion principle can be extended to the problem of counting the number of elements in the union of three sets. The trick is to think of the union of three sets as the union of two sets. It goes as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 |A \cup B \cup C| &= |(A \cup B) \cup C|, \\
 &= |A \cup B| + |C| - |(A \cup B) \cap C|, \\
 &= |A| + |B| + |C| - |A \cap B| - |(A \cup B) \cap C|, \\
 &= |A| + |B| + |C| - |A \cap B| - |(A \cap C) \cup (B \cap C)|, \\
 &= |A| + |B| + |C| - |A \cap B| - |(A \cap C) \cup (B \cap C)|, \\
 &= |A| + |B| + |C| - |A \cap B| - (|A \cap C| + |B \cap C| - |(A \cap C) \cap (B \cap C)|), \\
 &= |A| + |B| + |C| - |A \cap B| - |A \cap C| - |B \cap C| + |A \cap B \cap C|.
 \end{aligned}$$

This might more appropriately be named the inclusion-exclusion-inclusion formula, but nobody calls it that. In words, the formula says that to count the number of elements in the union of three sets, first, include everything in each set, then exclude everything in the overlap of each pair of sets, and finally, re-include everything in the overlap of all three sets.

Example 31.3. *How many integers between 1 and 1000 are divisible by at least one of 7, 9, and 11?*

Solution. Let S denote the set of integers between 1 and 1000 divisible by 7, let N denote the set of integers between 1 and 1000 divisible by 9, and E denote the set of integers between 1 and 1000 divisible by 11. We need to count the number of integers in $S \cup N \cup E$. By the principle of inclusion-exclusion,

$$\begin{aligned}
 |S \cup N \cup E| &= |S| + |N| + |E| - |S \cap N| - |S \cap E| - |N \cap E| + |S \cap N \cap E| \\
 &= \left\lfloor \frac{1000}{7} \right\rfloor + \left\lfloor \frac{1000}{9} \right\rfloor + \left\lfloor \frac{1000}{11} \right\rfloor - \left\lfloor \frac{1000}{63} \right\rfloor - \left\lfloor \frac{1000}{77} \right\rfloor - \left\lfloor \frac{1000}{99} \right\rfloor + \left\lfloor \frac{1000}{693} \right\rfloor \\
 &= 142 + 111 + 90 - 15 - 12 - 10 + 1 = 307.
 \end{aligned}$$

There are similar inclusion-exclusion formulas for the union of four, five, six, \dots sets. The formulas can be proved by induction with the inductive step using the trick we used above to go from two sets to three. However, there is a much neater way to prove the formula based on the Binomial Theorem.

Theorem 31.4. *Given finite sets A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n*

$$\left| \bigcup_{k=1}^n A_k \right| = \sum_{k=1}^n |A_k| - \sum_{1 \leq j < k \leq n} |A_j \cap A_k| + \dots + (-1)^{n-1} \left| \bigcap_{k=1}^n A_k \right|.$$

Proof. *Suppose $x \in \bigcup_{k=1}^n A_k$. We need to show that x is counted exactly once by the right-hand side of the promised formula. Say $x \in A_i$ for exactly p of the sets A_i , where $1 \leq p \leq n$.*

The key to the proof is being able to count the number of intersections in each summation on the right-hand side of the offered formula that contain x since we will account for x once for each such term. The number of such terms in the first sum is $n = \binom{p}{1}$, the number in the second term is $\binom{p}{2}$, and, in general, the number of terms in the j^{th} sum will be $\binom{p}{j}$ provided $j \leq p$. If $j > p$ then x will not be any of the intersections of j of the sets, and so will not contribute any more to the right side of the formula.

So the total number of times x is accounted for on the right hand side is

$$\begin{aligned} & \binom{p}{1} - \binom{p}{2} + \dots + (-1)^{p-1} \binom{p}{p}, \\ &= 1 - \left(\binom{p}{0} - \binom{p}{1} + \binom{p}{2} - \dots + (-1)^p \binom{p}{p} \right), \\ &= 1 - (1 - 1)^p = 1. \end{aligned}$$

Just as we hoped. ♣

Example 31.5. *How many students are in a calculus class if 14 are math majors, 22 are computer science majors, 15 are engineering majors, and 13 are chemistry majors, if 5 students are double majoring in math and computer science, 3 students are double majoring in chemistry and engineering, 10 are double majoring in computer science and engineering, 4 are double majoring in chemistry and computer science, none are double majoring in math and engineering and none are double majoring in math and chemistry, and no student has more than two majors?*

Solution. Let A_1 denote the math majors, A_2 denote the computer science majors, A_3 denote the engineering majors, and A_4 the chemistry majors. Then the information given is

$$\begin{aligned} |A_1| &= 14, & |A_2| &= 22, & |A_3| &= 15, & |A_4| &= 13, \\ |A_1 \cap A_2| &= 5, & |A_1 \cap A_3| &= 0, & |A_1 \cap A_4| &= 0, \\ |A_2 \cap A_3| &= 10, & |A_2 \cap A_4| &= 4, & |A_3 \cap A_4| &= 3, \\ |A_1 \cap A_2 \cap A_3| &= 0, & |A_1 \cap A_2 \cap A_4| &= 0, \\ |A_1 \cap A_3 \cap A_4| &= 0, & |A_2 \cap A_3 \cap A_4| &= 0, \end{aligned}$$

and

$$|A_1 \cap A_2 \cap A_3 \cap A_4| = 0.$$

So, by inclusion-exclusion, the number of students in the class is

$$14 + 22 + 15 + 13 - 5 - 10 - 4 - 3 = 42.$$

Example 31.6. How many ternary strings (using 0's, 1's and 2's) of length 8 either start with a 1, end with two 0's or have 4th and 5th positions 12, respectively?

Solution. Let A_1 denote the set of ternary strings of length 8 which start with a 1, A_2 denote the set of ternary strings of length 8 which end with two 0's, and A_3 denote the set of ternary strings of length 8 which have 4th and 5th positions 12. By inclusion-exclusion, the answer is $3^7 + 3^6 + 3^6 - 3^5 - 3^5 - 3^4 + 3^3$.

31.3 Inclusion-exclusion with the Good=Total-Bad trick

The inclusion-exclusion formula is often used along with the Good=Total-Bad trick.

Example 31.7. How many integers between 1 and 1000 are divisible by none of 7, 9, and 11?

Solution. There are 1000 numbers between 1 and 1000 (assuming 1 and 1000 are included). As counted before, there are 307 of those that are divisi-

ble by at least one of 7, 9, and 11. That means there are $1000 - 307 = 693$ that are divisible by none of 7, 9, or 11.

31.4 Exercises

Exercise 31.1. *At a certain college no student is allowed more than two majors. How many students are in the college if there are 70 math majors, 160 chemistry majors, 230 biology majors, 56 geology majors, 24 physics majors, 35 anthropology majors, 12 double math-physics majors, 10 double math-chemistry majors, 4 double biology-math majors, 53 double biology-chemistry majors, 5 double biology-anthropology majors, and no other double majors?*

Exercise 31.2. *How many bit strings of length 15 start with the string 1111, end with the string 1000 or have 4th through 7th bits 1010?*

Exercise 31.3. *How many positive integers between 1000 and 9999 inclusive are not divisible by any of 4, 10 or 25 (careful!)?*

Exercise 31.4. *How many permutations of the digits 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, have at least one digit in its own spot? In other words, a 1 in the first spot, or a 2 in the second, etc. For example, 35241 is OK since it has a 4 in the fourth spot, and 14235 is OK, since it has a 1 in the first spot (and also a 5 in the fifth spot). But 31452 is no good. Hint: Let A_1 be the set of permutations that have 1 in the first spot, let A_2 be the set of permutations that 2 in the second spot, and so on.*

Exercise 31.5. *How many permutations of the digits 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 have no digit in its own spot?*

The Pigeonhole Principle

THE PIGEONHOLE PRINCIPLE, like the sum and product rules, is another one of those absolutely obvious counting facts. The statement is simple: If $n + 1$ objects are divided into n piles (some piles can be empty), then at least one pile must have two or more objects in it. Or, more colorfully, if $n + 1$ pigeons land in n pigeonholes, then at least one pigeonhole has two or more pigeons. What could be more obvious? The pigeonhole principle is used to show that no matter how a certain task is carried out, some specific result must always happen.

As a simple example, suppose we have a drawer containing ten identical black socks and ten identical white socks. How many socks do we need to select to be sure we have a matching pair? The answer is three. Think of the pigeonholes as the colors black and white, and as each sock is selected put it in the pigeonhole of its color. After we have placed the third sock, one of the two pigeonholes must have at least two socks in it, and we will have a matching pair. Of course, we may have been lucky and had a pair after picking the second sock, but the pigeonhole principle *guarantees* that with the third sock we will have a pair.

As another example, suppose license plates are made consisting of four digits followed by two letters. Are there enough license plates for a state with seven million cars? No, since there are only $10^4 \cdot 26^2 = 6760000$ possible license plates, and so, by the pigeonhole principle, at least two of the seven million plates assigned would have to be the same.

32.1 General pigeonhole principle

A slightly fancier version of the pigeonhole principle says that if N objects are distributed in k piles, then there must be a least one pile with $\lceil \frac{N}{k} \rceil$ objects in it.

That formula looks impressive, but actually is easy to understand. For example, if there are 52 people in a room, we can be absolutely certain that there are at least eight born on the same day of the week. Think of it this way: with 49 people, it would be possible to have seven born on each of the seven days of the week. But when the 50th one is reached, it must boost one day up to an eighth person. That is really about all there is to it. The general proof of the fancy pigeonhole principle uses this same sort of reasoning. It is a proof by contradiction, and goes as follows:

Avoidance principle: how long can we go before our hand is forced?

Theorem 32.1 (Pigeonhole Principle). *If N objects are distributed in k piles, then there must be a least one pile with $\lceil \frac{N}{k} \rceil$ objects in it.*

Proof. *Suppose we have N objects distributed in k piles, and suppose that every pile has fewer than $\lceil \frac{N}{k} \rceil$ objects in it. That means that the piles each contain $\lceil \frac{N}{k} \rceil - 1$ or fewer objects. We will use the fact that $\lceil \frac{N}{k} \rceil < \frac{N}{k} + 1$ to complete the proof. The total number of object will be at most $k \left(\lceil \frac{N}{k} \rceil - 1 \right) < k \left(\left(\frac{N}{k} + 1 \right) - 1 \right) = N$. That is a contradiction since we know there is a total of N objects in the k piles. ♣*

32.2 Examples

Even though the pigeonhole principle sounds very simple, clever applications of it can produce totally unexpected results.

Example 32.2. *Five misanthropes move to a perfectly square deserted island that measures two kilometers on a side. Of course, being misanthropes, they want to live as far from each other as possible. Show that, no matter where they build on the island, some two will be no more than $\sqrt{2}$ kilometers of each other.*

Solution. *Divide the island into four one kilometer by one kilometer squares by drawing lines joining the midpoints of opposite sides. Since there are five*

people and four squares, the pigeonhole principle guarantees there will be two people living in one of those four squares. But people in one of those squares cannot be further apart than the length of the diagonal of the square which is, according to Pythagoras, $\sqrt{2}$. ♣

Example 32.3. For any positive integer n , there is a positive multiple of n made up of a number of 1's followed by a number of 0's. For example, for $n = 1084$, we see $1084 \cdot 1025 = 1111100$.

Solution. Consider the $n + 1$ integers $1, 11, 111, \dots, 11 \dots 1$, where the last one consists of 1 repeated $n + 1$ times. Some two of these must be the same modulo n , and so n will divide the difference of some two of them. But the difference of two of those numbers is of the required type. ♣

Example 32.4. Bill has 20 days to prepare his tiddledywinks title defense. He has decided to practice at least one hour every day. But, to avoid burn-out, he will not practice more than a total of 30 hours. Show there is a sequence of consecutive days during which he practices exactly 9 hours.

Solution. For $j = 1, 2, \dots, 20$, let $t_j =$ the total number of hours Bill practices up to and including day j . Since he practices at least one hour every day, and the total number of hours is no more than 30, we see

$$0 < t_1 < t_2 < \dots < t_{20} \leq 30.$$

Adding 9 to each term we get

$$9 < t_1 + 9 < t_2 + 9 < \dots < t_{20} + 9 \leq 39.$$

So we have 40 integers $t_1, t_2, \dots, t_{20}, t_1 + 9, \dots, t_{20} + 9$, all between 1 and 39. By the pigeonhole principle, some two must be equal, and the only way that can happen is for $t_i = t_j + 9$ for some i and j . It follows that $t_i - t_j = 9$, and since the difference $t_i - t_j$ is the total number of hours Bill practiced from day $j + 1$ to day i , that shows there is a sequence of consecutive days during which he practiced exactly 9 hours. ♣

32.3 Exercises

Exercise 32.1. Show that in any group of eight people, at least two were born on the same day of the week.

Exercise 32.2. Show that in any group of 100 people, at least 15 were born on the same day of the week.

Exercise 32.3. How many cards must be selected from a deck to be sure that at least six of the selected cards have the same suit?

Exercise 32.4. Show that in any set of n positive integers, where $n \geq 2$, there must be a pair with a difference that is a multiple of $n - 1$.

Exercise 32.5. Al has 75 days to master discrete mathematics. He decides to study at least one hour every day, but no more than a total of 125 hours. Show there must be a sequence of consecutive days during which he studies exactly 24 hours.

Tougher Counting Problems

ALL OF THE COUNTING EXERCISES you've been asked to complete so far have not been realistic. In general it won't be true that a counting problem fits neatly into a section. So we need to work on the bigger picture.

When we start any counting exercise it is true that there is an underlying exercise at the basic level that we want to consider first. So instead of answering the question immediately we might first want to decide on what type of exercise we have. So far we have seen three types which are distinguishable by the answers to two questions.

- (1) In forming the objects we want to count, is repetition allowed?
- (2) In forming the objects we want to count, does the order of selection matter?

The three scenarios we have seen so far are described in table 33.1.

There are two problems to address. First of all, table 33.1 is incomplete. What about, for example, counting objects where repetition is allowed, but order doesn't matter. Second of all, there are connections among the types which make some solutions appear misleading. But as a general rule of thumb, if we correctly identify the type of problem we are working on, then all we have to do is use the principles of addition, multiplication, inclusion/exclusion, or exclusion to decompose our problem into subproblems. The solutions to the subproblems often have the same form as the underlying problem. The

Order	Repetition	Type	Form
Y	Y	r -strings	n^r
Y	N	r -permutations	$P(n, r)$
N	N	r -combinations	$\binom{n}{r}$

Table 33.1: Basic counting problems

principles we employed direct us on how the sub-solutions should be recombined to give the final answer.

Example 33.1. *As an example of the second problem, if we ask how many binary strings of length 10 contain exactly three 1's, then the underlying problem is an r -string problem. But in this case the answer is $\binom{10}{3}$. Of course this is really $\binom{10}{3}1^31^7$ from the binomial theorem. In this case the part of the answer which looks like n^r is suppressed since it's trivial. To see the difference we might ask how many ternary strings of length 10 contain exactly three 1's. Now the answer is $\binom{10}{3}1^32^7$, since we choose the three positions for the 1's to go in, and then fill in each of the 7 remaining positions with a 0 or a 2.*

33.1 The Basic Donut Shop Problem

To begin to address the first problem we introduce If you get to the donut shop before the cops get there, you will find that they have a nice variety of donuts. You might want to order several dozen. They will put your order in a box. You don't particularly care what order the donuts are put into the box. You do usually want more than one of several types. The number of ways for you to complete your order is therefore a counting problem where order doesn't matter, and repetition is allowed.

In order to answer the question of how many ways you can complete your order, we first recast the problem mathematically. From among n types of objects we want to select r objects. If x_i denotes the number of objects of the i th type selected, we have $0 \leq x_i$, (since we cannot choose a negative number of chocolate donuts), also $x_i \in \mathbb{Z}$, (since we cannot select fractional parts of donuts). So, the different ways to order are in one-to-one correspondence with the solutions to

$$x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n = r, \text{ with } x_i \geq 0, x_i \in \mathbb{Z}, \text{ for } i = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

Next, in order to compute the number of solutions in non-negative integers to $x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n = r$, we model each solution as a string (possibly empty) of x_1 1's followed by a +, then a string of x_2 1's

followed by a +, ... then a string of x_{n-1} 1's followed by a +, then a string of x_n 1's. So for example, if $x_1 = 2, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 1, x_4 = 3$ is a solution to $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 = 6$ the string we get is $11 + +1 + 111$.

Finally, we see that the total number of solutions in non-negative integers to $x_1 + \dots + x_n = r$, is the number of binary strings of length $r + n - 1$ with exactly r 1's and $(n - 1)$ +'s. From the remark above, the number of ways to select r donuts from n different types is

$$\binom{n + r - 1}{r}.$$

33.2 The More Realistic Donut Shop Problem

The basic donut shop problem is not very realistic in two ways. First it is common that some of your order will be determined by other people. You might for example canvas the people in your office before you go to see if there is anything you can pick up for them. So whereas you want to order r donuts, you might have been asked to pick up a certain number of various types.

Now suppose that we know that we want to select r donuts from among n types so that at least a_i ($a_i \geq 0$) donuts of type i are selected. In terms of our equation, we have $x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n = r$, where $a_i \leq x_i$, and $x_i \in \mathbb{Z}$. If we set $y_i = x_i - a_i$ for $i = 1, \dots, n$, and $a = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i$, then $0 \leq y_i, y_i \in \mathbb{Z}$ and

$$\sum_{i=1}^n y_i = \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - a_i) = \left[\sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right] - \left[\sum_{i=1}^n a_i \right] = r - a.$$

So, the number of ways to complete our order is $\binom{n + (r - a) - 1}{(r - a)}$.

Still, we qualified the donut shop problem by supposing that we arrived before the cops did.

First ask for the donuts your colleagues wanted (total of a), then randomly get the rest ($r - a$).

33.3 The Real Donut Shop Problem

If we arrive at the donut shop after canvassing our friends, we want to select r donuts from among n types. The problem is that there are probably only a few left of each type. This may place an upper

limit on how often we can select a particular type. So now we wish to count solutions to

$$x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n = r, \text{ with } a_i \leq x_i \leq b_i, x_i \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

We proceed by replacing r by $s = r - a$, where a is the sum of lower bounds. We also replace b_i by $c_i = b_i - a_i$ for $i = 1, \dots, n$. So we want to find the number of solutions to $0 \leq y_i \leq c_i, y_i \in \mathbb{Z}$, and $y_1 + y_2 + \dots + y_n = s$. There are several ways to proceed. We choose inclusion/exclusion. Let us set \mathcal{U} to be all solutions in non-negative integers to $y_1 + \dots + y_n = s$. Next let A_i denote those solutions in non-negative integers to $y_1 + \dots + y_n = r$, where $c_i < y_i$. Then we want to compute $|\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3} \cap \dots \cap \overline{A_n}|$, which we can do by general inclusion/exclusion, and the ideas from the more realistic donut shop problem.

Example 33.2. *Let us count the number of solutions to*

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 = 34,$$

where $0 \leq x_1 \leq 4, 0 \leq x_2 \leq 5, 0 \leq x_3 \leq 8$ and $0 \leq x_4 \leq 40$.

As discussed above, we have $c_1 = 4, c_2 = 5, c_3 = 8$, and $c_4 = 40$. Hence, we see that

$$|\mathcal{U}| = \binom{34 + 4 - 1}{34}.$$

Now, A_i will denote the solutions in non-negative integers to

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 = 34, \text{ with } x_i > c_i, \text{ for } i = 1, 2, 3, 4.$$

Next, realize that $A_4 = \emptyset$, so we have

$$\overline{A_4} = \mathcal{U} \quad \text{and} \quad \overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3} \cap \overline{A_4} = \overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3}.$$

Now, to compute A_1 , we must first rephrase $x_1 > 4$ as a non-strict inequality, i.e. $5 \leq x_1$. So, it follows that

$$|A_1| = \binom{29 + 4 - 1}{29}.$$

Similarly, we have

$$|A_2| = \binom{28+4-1}{28}, \quad \text{and} \quad |A_3| = \binom{25+4-1}{25}.$$

Next, we observe that $A_1 \cap A_2$ represents the set of all solutions in non-negative integers to

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 = 34 \quad \text{with } 5 \leq x_1 \text{ and } 6 \leq x_2.$$

So, we have

$$|A_1 \cap A_2| = \binom{23+4-1}{23}.$$

Also, we find that

$$|A_1 \cap A_3| = \binom{20+4-1}{20} \quad \text{and} \quad |A_2 \cap A_3| = \binom{19+4-1}{19}.$$

Finally, we see that

$$|A_1 \cap A_2 \cap A_3| = \binom{14+4-1}{14}.$$

Hence, the final answer is¹

$$\begin{aligned} & \binom{34+4-1}{34} - \binom{29+4-1}{29} - \binom{28+4-1}{28} - \binom{25+4-1}{25} \\ & + \binom{23+4-1}{23} + \binom{20+4-1}{20} + \binom{19+4-1}{19} - \binom{14+4-1}{14}. \end{aligned}$$

¹ We leave the answer in this form for clarity. The numerical value is not illuminating.

We can now solve general counting exercises where order is unimportant and repetition is restricted somewhere between no repetition, and full repetition.

33.4 Problems with order and some repetition

To complete the picture we should be able to also solve counting exercises where order is important and repetition is partial. This is somewhat easier. It suffices to consider the subcases in example 33.3.

Example 33.3. Let us take as initial problem the number of quaternary strings of length 15. There are 4^{15} of these.

Now, if we ask how many contain exactly two 0's, the answer is $\binom{15}{2}3^{13}$.

If we ask how many contain exactly two 0's and four 1's, the answer is

$$\binom{15}{2} \binom{13}{4} 2^9.$$

And, if we ask how many contain exactly two 0's, four 1's and five 2's, the answer is

$$\binom{15}{2} \binom{13}{4} \binom{9}{5} \binom{4}{4} = \frac{15!}{2! \cdot 4! \cdot 5! \cdot 4!}.$$

So, in fact many types of counting are related by what we call the multinomial theorem.

Theorem 33.4. When r is a non-negative integer and $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \in \mathbb{R}$, we have

$$(x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n)^r = \sum_{\substack{e_1 + e_2 + \dots + e_n = r \\ 0 \leq e_i}} \binom{r}{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n} x_1^{e_1} x_2^{e_2} \dots x_n^{e_n},$$

where $\binom{r}{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n} = \frac{r!}{e_1! e_2! \dots e_n!}.$

33.5 The six fundamental counting problems

To recap, when we have a counting exercise, we should first ask whether order is important and then ask whether repetition is allowed. This will get us into the right ballpark as far as the form of the solution. We must use basic counting principles to decompose the exercise into sub-problems. Solve the sub-problems, and put the pieces back together. Solutions to sub-problems usually take the same form as the underlying problem, though they may be related to it via the multinomial theorem. Table 33.2 synthesizes our six fundamental cases.

Order	Repetition	Form
Y	Y	n^r
Y	N	$P(n, r)$
N	Y	$\binom{r+n-1}{r}$
N	N	$\binom{n}{r}$
Y	some	$\binom{r}{k_1, k_2, \dots, k_n}$
N	some	$\binom{r+n-1}{r}$ w/ I-E

Table 33.2: Six counting problems

33.6 Exercises

Exercise 33.1. How many quaternary strings of length n are there (a quaternary string uses 0's, 1's, 2's, and 3's)?

Exercise 33.2. How many quaternary strings of length less than or equal to 7 are there?

Exercise 33.3. How many solutions in integers are there to $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 = 54$, where $3 \leq x_1$, $4 \leq x_2$, $5 \leq x_3$, and $6 < x_4, x_5, x_6, x_7$?

Exercise 33.4. How many ternary strings of length n start 0101 and end 212?

Exercise 33.5. A doughnut shop has 8 kinds of doughnuts: chocolate, glazed, sugar, cherry, strawberry, vanilla, caramel, and jalapeno. How many ways are there to order three dozen doughnuts, if at most 4 are jalapeno, at most 6 are cherry, and at most 8 are strawberry, but there are no restrictions on the other varieties?

Exercise 33.6. How many strings of twelve lowercase English letters are there

- (a) which start with the letter x , if letters may be repeated?
- (b) which contain the letter x at least once, if letters can be repeated?
- (c) which contain each of the letters x and y at least once, if letters can be repeated?
- (d) which contain at least one vowel, where letters may not be repeated?

Exercise 33.7. How many bit strings of length 19 either begin "0101", or have 4th, 5th and 6th digits "101", or end "1010"?

Exercise 33.8. How many pentary strings of length 15 consist of three 0's, four 1's, three 2's, four 3's and one 4?

Exercise 33.9. How many ternary strings of length 9 have

- (a) exactly four 1's?
- (b) at least three 0's?
- (c) at most three 1's?

Exercise 33.10. *Seven lecturers and fourteen professors are on the faculty of a math department.*

- (a) *How many ways are there to form a committee with seven members which contains more lecturers than professors?*
- (b) *How many ways are there to form a committee with seven members where the professors outnumber the lecturers on the committee by at least a two-to-one margin?*
- (c) *How many ways are there to form a committee consisting of at least five lecturers?*

Exercise 33.11. *How many ways are there to seat six people at a circular table where two seatings are considered equivalent if one can be obtained from the other by rotating the table?*

Exercise 33.12. *Prove that a set with $n \geq 1$ elements has the same number of subsets with an even number of elements, as subsets with an odd number of elements.*

34

Counting Using Recurrence Relations

IT IS NOT ALWAYS CONVENIENT to use the methods of earlier chapters to solve counting problems. Another technique for finding the solution to a counting problem is **recursive counting**. The method will be illustrated with several examples.

34.1 Recursive counting method

Example 34.1. Recall that a bit string is a list of 0's and 1's, and the length of a bit string is the total number of 0's and 1's in the string. For example, 10111 is a bit string of length five, and 000100 is a bit string of length six. The problem of counting the number of bit strings of length n is duck soup. There are two choices for each bit, and so, applying the product rule, there are 2^n such strings. However, consider the problem of counting the number of bit strings of length n with no adjacent 0's.

Let's use a_n to denote the number of bit strings of length n with no adjacent 0's. Here are a few sample cases for small values of n .

$n=0$: Just one good bit string of length zero, and that is λ , the empty bit string.

So $a_0 = 1$.

$n=1$: There are two good bit strings of length one. Namely 0 and 1. So $a_1 = 2$.

$n=2$: There are three good bit strings of length two. Namely, 01, 10 and 11.

(Of course, 00 is a bad bit string.) That means $a_2 = 3$.

$n=3$: Things start to get confusing now. But here is the list of good bit strings of length three: 010, 011, 101, 110, and 111. So $a_3 = 5$.

$n=4$: A little scratch work produces the good bit strings 0101, 0111, 1011, 1101, 1111, 0110, 1010, and 1110, for a total of eight. That means $a_4 = 8$.

We can do a few more, but it is hard to see a formula for a_n like the 2^n formula that gives the total number of all bit strings of length n . Even though a formula for a_n is difficult to spot, there is a pattern to the list of values for a_n which looks like the Fibonacci sequence pattern. In fact, the list so far looks like 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, and if a few more are worked out by brute force, it turns out the list continues 13, 21, 34. So, it certainly seems that the solution to the counting problem can be expressed recursively as $a_0 = 1$, $a_1 = 2$, and for $n \geq 2$, $a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2}$. If this guess is really correct, then we can quickly compute the number of good bit strings of length n . We just calculate a_0, a_1, a_2 , etc., until we reach the a_n we are interested in.

Such a recursive solution to counting problems is certainly less satisfactory than a simple formula, but some counting problems are so messy that a simple formula might not be possible, and the recursive solution is better than nothing in such a case.

There is one problem with the recursive solution offered in example 34.1. We said that *it seems that* the solution to the counting problem can be expressed recursively as $a_0 = 1$, $a_1 = 2$, and for $n \geq 2$, $a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2}$. That *it seems that* is not an acceptable justification of the formula. After all, we are basing that guess on just eight or ten values of the infinite sequence a_n , and it is certainly possible that those values happen to follow the pattern we've guessed simply by accident. Maybe the true pattern is much more complicated, and we have been tricked by the small number of cases we have considered. It is necessary to show that the guessed pattern is correct by supplying a logical argument.

Our argument would begin by checking the initial conditions we offered. In other words, we would verify by hand that $a_0 = 1$ and $a_1 = 2$. This serves as a basis for the verification of the recursive formula. Now what we want to do is assume that we have already calculated all the values a_0, a_1, \dots, a_k for some $k \geq 1$, and **show** that a_{k+1} must equal $a_k + a_{k-1}$. It is very important to understand that *we do not want to compute the value of a_{k+1}* . We only want to prove

that $a_{k+1} = a_k + a_{k-1}$. The major error made doing these types of problems is attempting to compute the specific value of a_{k+1} . **Don't fall for that trap!** After all, if it were possible to actually compute the specific value of a_{k+1} , then we could find a formula for a_n in general, and we wouldn't have to be seeking a recursive relation at all.

Here is how the argument would go in the bit string example. Suppose we have lists of the good bit strings of lengths $0, 1, \dots, k$. Here is how to make a list of all the good bit strings of length $k + 1$. First, take any good bit string of length k and add a 1 on the right hand end. The result must be a good bit string of length $k + 1$ (since we added a 1 to the end, and the original bit string didn't have two consecutive 0's, the new bit string cannot have two consecutive 0's either). In that way we form some good bit strings of length $k + 1$. In fact, we have built exactly a_k good bit strings of length $k + 1$. But wait, there's more! (as they say in those simple-minded TV ads). Another way to build a good bit string of length $k + 1$ is to take a good bit string of length $k - 1$ and add 10 to the right end. Clearly these will also be good bit strings of length $k + 1$. And these all end with a 0, so they are all new ones, and not ones we built in the previous step. How many are there of this type? One for each of the good bit strings of length $k - 1$, or a total of a_{k-1} . Thus, so far we have built $a_k + a_{k-1}$ good bit strings of length $k + 1$. Now we will show that in fact we have a complete list of all good bit string of length $k + 1$, and that will complete the proof that $a_{k+1} = a_k + a_{k-1}$. But before driving that last nail into the coffin, let's look at the steps outlined above for the case $k + 1 = 4$.

The previous paragraph essentially provides an algorithm for building good bit strings of length $k + 1$ from good bits strings of lengths k and $k - 1$. The algorithm instructs us to add 1 to the right end of all the good bit strings of length k and 10 to the right of all the good bit strings of length $k - 1$. Applying the algorithm for the case $k + 1 = 4$, gives the following list, where the added bits are put in parentheses to make them stand out. 010(1), 011(1), 101(1), 110(1), 111(1), 01(10), 10(10), and 11(10).

There remains one detail to iron out. It is clear that the algorithm

will produce good bit strings of length $k + 1$. But, does it produce *every* good bit string of length $k + 1$? If it does not, then the recursive relation we are offering for the solution to the counting problem will eventually begin to produce answers that are too small, and we will undercount the number of good bit strings. To see that we do count all good bit strings of length $k + 1$, consider any particular good bit string of length $k + 1$, call it s for short, and look at the right most bit of s . There are two possibilities for that bit. It could be a 1. If that is so, then when the 1 is removed the remaining bit string is a good of length k (it can't have two adjacent 0's since s doesn't have two adjacent 0's). That means the bit string s is produced by adding a 1 to the right end of a good bit string of length k , and so s is produced by the first step in the algorithm. The other option for s is that the right most bit is a 0. But then the second bit in from the right must be a 1, since s is a good bit string, so it doesn't have adjacent 0's. So the last two bits on the right of s are 10. If those two bits are removed, there remains a good bit string of length $k - 1$. Thus s is produced by adding 10 to the right end of a good bit string of length $k - 1$, and so s is produced by the second case in the algorithm.

In a nutshell, we have shown our algorithm produces $a_k + a_{k-1}$ good bit strings of length $k + 1$, and that the algorithm does not miss any good bit strings of length $k + 1$. Thus we have proved that $a_{k+1} = a_k + a_{k-1}$ for all $k \geq 2$.

Example 34.1 was explained in excruciating detail. Normally, the verifications will be much more briefly presented. It takes a while to get used to recursive counting, but once the light goes on, the beauty and simplicity of the method will become apparent.

34.2 Examples

Example 34.2. *This example is a little silly since it is very easy to write down a formula to solve the counting problem. But the point of the example is not find the solution to the problem but rather to exhibit recursive counting in action. The problem is to compute the total number of individual squares on an $n \times n$ checkerboard. If we let the total number of squares be*

denoted by s_n , then obviously $s_n = n^2$. For example, an ordinary checkerboard is an 8×8 board, and it has a total of $s_8 = 8^2 = 64$ individual squares. But let's count the number of squares recursively. Clearly $s_0 = 0$. Now suppose we have computed the values of s_0, s_1, \dots, s_k , for some $k \geq 0$. We will show how to compute s_{k+1} from those known values. To determine s_{k+1} , draw a $(k+1) \times (k+1)$ checkerboard. (You should make a little sketch of such a board for say $k+1 = 5$ so you can follow the process described next.) From that $(k+1) \times (k+1)$ board, slice off the right hand column of squares, and the bottom row of squares. What is left over will be a $k \times k$ checkerboard, so it will have s_k individual squares. That means that

$$s_{k+1} = s_k + \text{the number of squares sliced off}$$

Now ignore the lower right hand corner square for a moment. There are k other squares in the right hand column that was sliced off. Likewise, ignoring the corner square, there are k other squares in the bottom row that was sliced off. Hence the total number of squares sliced off was $k + k + 1$, the 1 accounting for the corner square. Thus

$$s_{k+1} = s_k + k + k + 1 = s_k + 2k + 1$$

So a recursive solution to the problem of counting $s_n =$ number of individual squares on an $n \times n$ checkerboard is

$$s_0 = 0, \text{ and}$$

$$s_{k+1} = s_k + 2k + 1, \text{ for } k \geq 0.$$

Using the recursive relation, we get $s_0 = 0$, $s_1 = s_0 + 2(0) + 1 = 0 + 0 + 1 = 1$, $s_2 = s_1 + 2(1) + 1 = 1 + 2 + 1 = 4$, $s_3 = s_2 + 2(2) + 1 = 4 + 4 + 1 = 9$, and so on, giving what we recognize as the correct answers.

Example 34.3. Suppose we have available an unlimited number of pennies and nickels to deposit in a vending machine (a really old vending machine it seems, since it even accepts pennies). Let d_n be the number of different ways of depositing a total of n cents in the machine. Just to make sure we understand the problem, let's compute d_n for a few small values of n . Clearly $d_0 = 1$ since there is only one way to deposit no money in the machine

(namely don't put any money in the machine!). $d_1 = 1$ (put in one penny), $d_2 = 1$ (put in two pennies), $d_3 = 1$ (put in three pennies), $d_4 = 1$ (put in four pennies). Now things start to get exciting! $d_5 = 2$ (put in five pennies or put in one nickel). And even more thrilling is $d_6 = 3$ (the three options are (1) six pennies, (2) one penny followed by a nickel, and (3) one nickel followed by a penny). That last count indicates a fact that may not have been clear: the order on which pennies and nickels are deposited is considered important. With a little more trial and error with pencil and paper, further values are found to be $d_7 = 4$, $d_8 = 5$, $d_9 = 6$, $d_{10} = 8$, $d_{11} = 11$, and $d_{12} = 15$. It is hard to see a formula for these values. But it is duck soup to write down a recursive relation that produces this sequence of values. Think of it this way, suppose we wanted to put n cents in the machine, where $n \geq 5$. We can make the first coin either a penny or a nickel. If we make the first coin a penny, then we will need to add $n - 1$ more cents, which can be done in d_{n-1} ways. On the other hand, if we make the first coin a nickel, we will need to deposit $n - 5$ more cents, and that can be done in d_{n-5} ways. By the sum rule of counting, we conclude that the number of ways of depositing n cents is $d_{n-1} + d_{n-5}$. In other words, $d_n = d_{n-1} + d_{n-5}$ for $n \geq 5$.

Since our recursive relation for d_n does not kick in until n reaches 5, we will need to include d_0, d_1, d_2, d_3 , and d_4 as initial terms. So the recursive solution to this counting problem is

$$d_0 = 1 \quad d_1 = 1 \quad d_2 = 1 \quad d_3 = 1 \quad d_4 = 1$$

$$\text{for } n \geq 5, \quad d_n = d_{n-1} + d_{n-5}$$

Example 34.4 (The Tower of Hanoi). The classic example of recursive counting concerns the story of the Tower of Hanoi. A group of monks wished a magical tower to be constructed from 1000 stone rings. The rings were to be of 1000 different sizes. The size and composition of the rings was to be designed so that any ring could support the entire weight of all of the rings smaller than itself, but each ring would be crushed beneath the weight of any larger ring.

The monks hired the lowest bidder to construct the tower in a clearing in the dense jungle nearby. Upon completion of construction the engineers brought the monks to see their work. The monks admired the exquisite work-

manship, but informed the engineers that the tower was not in the proper clearing.

In the jungle there were only three permanent clearings. The monks had labelled them A, B and C. The engineers had labelled them in reverse order. The monks instructed the engineers to move the tower from clearing A to clearing C!

Because of the massive size of the rings, the engineers could only move one per day. No ring could be left anywhere in the jungle except one of A, B, or C. Finally each clearing was only large enough so that rings could be stored there by stacking them one on top of another.

The monks then asked the engineers how long it would take for them to fix the problem.

Before they all flipped a gasket, the most mathematically talented engineer came upon the following solution.

Let H_n denote the minimum number of days required to move an n ring tower from A to C under the constraints given. Then $H_1 = 1$, and in general an n ring tower can be moved from A to C by first moving the top $(n - 1)$ rings from A to B leaving the bottom ring at A, then moving the bottom ring from A to C, and then moving the top $(n - 1)$ rings from clearing B to clearing C. That shows $H_n \leq 2 \cdot H_{n-1} + 1$, for $n \geq 2$, and a little more thought shows the algorithm just described cannot be improved upon. Thus $H_n = 2 \cdot H_{n-1} + 1$.

Using the initial condition $H_1 = 1$ together with the recursive relation $H_n = 2 \cdot H_{n-1} + 1$, we can generate terms of the sequence:

$$1, 3, 7, 15, 31, 63, 127, 255, 511, \dots,$$

and it looks like $H_n = 2^n - 1$ for $n \geq 1$, which can be verified by an easy induction.

So, the problem would be fixed in $2^{1000} - 1$ days, or approximately 2.93564×10^{296} centuries. Now, that is job security!

34.3 General rules for finding recursive solutions

Here are a few general rules for solving counting problems recursively:

- (1) do a few small cases by brute force,
- (2) think recursively: how can a larger case be solved if the solutions to smaller cases are known, and
- (3) check the numbers produced by the recursive solution to make sure they agree with the values obtained by brute force.

34.4 Exercises

Exercise 34.1. Suppose on December 31, 2000, a deposit of \$100 is made in a savings account that pays 10% annual interest (Ah, those were the days!). So one year after the initial deposit, on December 31, 2001, the account will be credited with \$10, and have a value of \$110. On December 31, 2002 that account will be credited with an additional \$11, and have value \$121. Find a recursive relation that gives the value of the account n years after the initial deposit.

Exercise 34.2. A (cheap) vending machine accepts pennies, nickels, and dimes. Let d_n be the number of ways of depositing n cents in the machine, where the order in which the coins are deposited matters. Determine a recurrence relation for d_n . Give the initial conditions.

Exercise 34.3. Al climbs stairs by taking either one or two steps at a time. For example, he can climb a flight of three steps in three different ways: (1) one step, one step, one step or (2) two step, one step, or (3) one step, two step. Determine a recursive formula for the number of different ways Al can climb a flight of n steps.

Exercise 34.4. Sal climbs stairs by taking either one, two, or three steps at a time. Determine a recursive formula for the number of different ways Sal can climb a flight of n steps.

Exercise 34.5. Passwords for a certain computer system are strings of uppercase letters. A valid password must contain an even number of X's. Determine a recurrence relation for the number of valid passwords of length n .

Exercise 34.6. Find a recurrence relation for the number of bitstrings of length n that contain two consecutive 0's.

Exercise 34.7. Find a recurrence relation for the number of bit strings of length n that contain the string 01.

Exercise 34.8. Find a recurrence relation for the number of binary strings of length n which do not contain the substring 010.

Exercise 34.9. Find a recurrence relation for the number of ternary strings of length n that contain two consecutive 0's.

Exercise 34.10. Find a recurrence relation for the number of ternary strings of length n that contain three consecutive zeroes.

Exercise 34.11. Find a recurrence relation for the number of quaternary strings which contain two consecutive 1's.

Exercise 34.12. Suppose the Tower of Hanoi rules are changed so that stones may only be transferred to an adjacent clearing in one move. Let I_n be the minimum number of moves required to transfer tower from clearing A to clearing C ?

(a) By brute force, determine $I_1, I_2,$ and I_3 .

(b) Find a recursive relation for I_n .

(c) Guess a formula for I_n .

Exercise 34.13. Suppose in the original Tower of Hanoi problem there are four clearings A, B, C, D . Find a recursive relation for J_n , the minimum number of moves needed to transfer the tower from clearing A to clearing D .

35

Solutions to Recurrence Relations

IN CHAPTER 34, IT WAS pointed out that recursively defined sequences suffer from one major drawback: In order to compute a particular term in the sequence, it is necessary to first compute all the terms of the sequence leading up to the one that is wanted. Imagine the chore to calculate the 250th Fibonacci number, f_{250} ! For problems of computation, there is nothing like having a formula like $a_n = n^2$, into which it is merely necessary to plug the number of interest.

35.1 Solving a recursion by conjecture

It may be possible to find a formula for a sequence that is defined recursively. When that can be done, you have the best of both the formula and recursive worlds. If we find a formula for the terms of a recursively defined sequence, we say we have **solved** the recursion.

Example 35.1. Here is an example: The sequence $\{a_n\}$ is defined recursively by the initial condition $a_0 = 2$, and the recursive formula $a_n = 2a_{n-1} - 1$ for $n \geq 1$. If the first few terms of this sequence are written out, the results are

$$2, 3, 5, 9, 17, 33, 65, 129, \dots,$$

and it shouldn't be too long before the pattern becomes clear. In fact, it looks like $a_n = 2^n + 1$ is the formula for a_n .

To prove that guess is correct, induction would be the best way to go.

You have to recognize the slightly hidden powers of 2: 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, . . .

Here are the details. Just to make everything clear, here is what we are going to show: If $a_0 = 2$, and $a_n = 2a_{n-1} - 1$ for $n \geq 1$, then $a_n = 2^n + 1$ for all $n \geq 0$. The basis for the inductive proof is the case $n = 0$. The correct value for a_0 is 2, and the guessed formula has value 2 when $n = 0$, so that checks out. Now for the inductive step: suppose that the formula for a_k is correct for a particular $k \geq 0$. That is, assume $a_k = 2^k + 1$ for some $k \geq 0$. Let's show that the formula must also be correct for a_{k+1} . That is, we want to show $a_{k+1} = 2^{k+1} + 1$. Well, we know that $a_{k+1} = 2a_k - 1$, and hence $a_{k+1} = 2(2^k + 1) - 1 = 2^{k+1} + 2 - 1 = 2^{k+1} + 1$, just as was to be proved. It can now be concluded that the formula we guessed is correct for all $n \geq 0$.

In example 35.1, it was possible to guess the correct formula for a_n after looking at a few terms. In most cases the formula will be so complicated that that sort of guessing will be out of the question.

35.2 Solving a recursion by unfolding

There is a method that will nearly automatically solve any recurrence of the form $a_0 = a$ and for, $n \geq 1$, $a_n = ba_{n-1} + c$ (where a, b, c are constants). The method is called **unfolding**.

Example 35.2. As an example, let's solve $a_0 = 2$ and, for $n \geq 1$, $a_n = 5 + 2a_{n-1}$. The plan is to write down the recurrence relation, and then substitute for a_{n-1} , then for a_{n-2} , and so on, until we reach a_0 . It looks like this

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= 5 + 2a_{n-1}, \\ &= 5 + 2(5 + 2a_{n-2}) = 5 + 5(2) + 2^2a_{n-2}, \\ &= 5 + 5(2) + 2^2(5 + 2a_{n-3}) = 5 + 5(2) + 5(2^2) + 2^3a_{n-3}. \end{aligned}$$

If this substitution is continued, eventually we reach an expression we can compute in closed form:

In the next to last step we use the formula for adding the terms of a geometric sequence.

$$\begin{aligned}a_n &= 5 + 5(2) + 5(2^2) + 5(2^3) + \cdots + 5(2^{n-1}) + 2^n a_0, \\&= 5(1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^{n-1}) + 2^n(2), \\&= 5 \frac{2^n - 1}{2 - 1} + 2(2^n), \\&= 5(2^n - 1) + 2(2^n), \\&= 7(2^n) - 5.\end{aligned}$$

35.3 Exercises

Exercise 35.1. *Guess the solution to $a_0 = 2$, and $a_1 = 4$, and, for $n \geq 2$, $a_n = 4a_{n-1} - 3a_{n-2}$ and prove your guess is correct by induction.*

Exercise 35.2. *Solve by unfolding: $a_0 = 2$, and, for $n \geq 1$, $a_n = 5a_{n-1}$.*

Exercise 35.3. *Solve by unfolding: $a_0 = 2$, and, for $n \geq 1$, $a_n = 5a_{n-1} + 3$.*

The Method of Characteristic Roots

THERE IS NO METHOD that will solve all recurrence relations. However, for one particular type, there is a standard technique. The type is called a **linear recurrence relation with constant coefficients**. In such a recurrence relation, the recurrence formula has the form

$$a_n = c_1 a_{n-1} + c_2 a_{n-2} + \dots + c_k a_{n-k} + f(n)$$

where c_1, \dots, c_k are constants with $c_k \neq 0$, and $f(n)$ is any function of n .

The **degree** of the recurrence is k , the number of terms we need to go back in the sequence to compute each new term. If $f(n) = 0$, then the recurrence relation is called homogeneous. Otherwise it is called **nonhomogeneous**.

In chapter 35, we noted that some simple non-homogeneous linear recurrence relations with constant coefficients can be solved by unfolding. This method is not powerful enough for more general problems. In this chapter we introduce a basic method that, in principle at least, can be used to solve any homogeneous linear recurrence relation with constant coefficients.

36.1 Homogeneous, constant coefficient recursions

We begin by considering the degree 2 case. That is, we have a recurrence relation of the form $a_n = c_1 a_{n-1} + c_2 a_{n-2}$, for $n \geq 2$, where c_1 and c_2 are real constants. We must also have two initial con-

ditions a_0 and a_1 . That is, we are given a_0 and a_1 and the formula $a_n = c_1 a_{n-1} + c_2 a_{n-2}$, for $n \geq 2$. Notice that $c_2 \neq 0$ or else we have a linear recurrence relation with constant coefficients and degree 1. What we seek is a **closed form formula** for a_n , which is a function of n alone, and which is therefore independent of the previous terms of the sequence.

36.1.1 Basic example of the method

Here's the technique in a specific example:

The problem we will solve is to find a formula for the terms of the sequence

$$a_0 = 4 \text{ and } a_1 = 8, \text{ with}$$

$$a_n = 4a_{n-1} + 12a_{n-2}, \text{ for } n \geq 2.$$

The first thing to do is to ignore the initial conditions, and concentrate on the recurrence relation. And the way to solve the recurrence relation is to guess the solution. Well, actually, it is to guess the **form** of the solution¹. For such a recurrence you should guess that the solution looks like $a_n = r^n$, for some constant r . In other words, guess the solution is simply the powers of some fixed number. The good news is that this guess will always be correct! You will always find some solutions of this form. When this guess is plugged into the recurrence relation and the equation is simplified, the result is an equation that can be solved for r . That equation is called the **characteristic equation** for the recurrence. In our example, when $a_n = r^n$ for each n , the result is $r^n = 4r^{n-1} + 12r^{n-2}$, and canceling r^{n-2} from each term, and rearranging the equation, we get $r^2 - 4r - 12 = 0$. That's the characteristic equation. The left side can be factored, and the equation then looks like $(r - 6)(r + 2) = 0$, and we see the solutions for r are $r = 6$ and $r = -2$. And, sure enough, if you check it out, you will see that $a_n = 6^n$ and $a_n = (-2)^n$ both satisfy the given

¹ An educated guess!

recurrence relation. In other words, we find that

$$6^n = 4 \cdot 6^{n-1} + 12 \cdot 6^{n-2}, \text{ for all } n \geq 2, \text{ and}$$

$$(-2)^n = 4 \cdot (-2)^{n-1} + 12 \cdot (-2)^{n-2}, \text{ for all } n \geq 2.$$

Using the characteristic equation, we have a method of finding some solutions to a recurrence relation. This method will not find all possible solutions however. *BUT...* if we find **all** the solutions to the characteristic equation, then they can be combined in a certain way to produce all possible solutions to the recurrence relation. The fact to remember is that if $r = a, b$ are the two solutions to the characteristic equation (for a recurrence of order two), then every possible solution to the linear homogenous recurrence relation must look like ²

$$\alpha a^n + \beta b^n,$$

for some constants α, β . In the example we have been working on, every possible solution looks like³

$$a_n = \alpha(6)^n + \beta(-2)^n.$$

Once we have figured out the general solution to the recurrence relation, it is time to think about the initial conditions. In our case, the initial conditions are $a_0 = 4$ and $a_1 = 8$. The idea is to select the constants α and β of the general solution $a_n = \alpha 6^n + \beta(-2)^n$ so it will produce the correct two initial values. For $n = 0$ we see we need $4 = a_0 = \alpha 6^0 + \beta(-2)^0 = \alpha + \beta$, and for $n = 1$, we need $8 = a_1 = \alpha 6^1 + \beta(-2)^1 = 6\alpha - 2\beta$. Now, we solve the following pair of equations for α and β :

$$\alpha + \beta = 4,$$

$$6\alpha - 2\beta = 8.$$

Performing a bit of algebra, we learn that $\alpha = 2$ and $\beta = 2$. Thus the solution to the recurrence is

$$a_n = 2 \cdot 6^n + 2 \cdot (-2)^n.$$

² Actually, that is not quite true. There is a slight catch to be mentioned later (see section 36.2).

³ This expression is called the **general solution** of the recurrence relation.

36.1.2 *Initial steps: the characteristic equation and its roots*

The steps in solving a recurrence problem are:

- (1) Determine the characteristic equation.
- (2) Find the solutions to the characteristic equation.
- (3) Write down the general solution to the recurrence relation.
- (4) Select the constants in the general solution to produce the correct initial conditions.

36.2 *Repeated characteristic roots.*

And now, about the little lie mentioned above: One catch with the method of characteristic equation occurs when the equation has repeated roots. Suppose, for example, that when the characteristic equation is factored the result is $(r - 2)(r - 2)(r - 3)(r + 5) = 0$. The characteristic roots are 2, 2, 3 and -5 . Here 2 is a repeated root. If we follow the instructions given above, then the general solution we would write down is

$$a_n = \alpha 2^n + \beta 2^n + \gamma 3^n + \delta (-5)^n. \quad (36.1)$$

However, this expression will **not** include all possible solutions to the recurrence relation. Happily, the problem is not too hard to repair: each time a root of the characteristic equation is repeated, multiply it by an additional factor of n in the general solution, and then proceed with step 4 as described earlier.

For our example, we modify one of the 2^n terms in equation 36.1. The correct general solution looks like

$$a_n = \alpha 2^n + \beta n \cdot 2^n + \gamma 3^n + \delta (-5)^n.$$

If $(r - 2)$ had been a four fold factor of the characteristic equation⁴, then the part of the general solution involving the 2's would look like

$$\alpha 2^n + \beta n \cdot 2^n + \gamma n^2 \cdot 2^n + \delta n^3 \cdot 2^n.$$

Notice the extra factor of n in the second term.

⁴ in other words, if 2 had been a characteristic root four times

Each new occurrence of a 2 is multiplied by one more factor of n .

36.3 The method of characteristic roots more formally

Let's describe the method of **characteristic equation** a little more formally. First, the characteristic equation is denoted by $\chi(x) = 0$. Notice that the degree of $\chi(x)$ coincides with the degree of the recurrence relation. Notice also that the non-leading coefficients of $\chi(x)$ are simply the negatives of the coefficients of the recurrence relation. In general, the characteristic equation of $a_n = c_1 a_{n-1} + \dots + c_k a_{n-k}$ is

$$\chi(x) = x^k - c_1 x^{k-1} - \dots - c_{k-1} x - c_k = 0.$$

A number r (possibly complex) is a **characteristic root** if $\chi(r) = 0$. From basic algebra we know that r is a root of a polynomial if and only if $(x - r)$ is a factor of the polynomial. When $\chi(x)$ is a degree 2 polynomial, by the quadratic formula, either $\chi(x) = (x - r_1)(x - r_2)$, where $r_1 \neq r_2$, or $\chi(x) = (x - r)^2$, for some r .

Theorem 36.1. *Let c_1 and c_2 be real numbers. Suppose that the polynomial $\chi(x) = x^2 - c_1 x - c_2$ has two distinct roots r_1 and r_2 . Then a sequence $a : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a solution of the recurrence relation $a_n = c_1 a_{n-1} + c_2 a_{n-2}$, for $n \geq 2$ if and only if $a_m = \alpha r_1^m + \beta r_2^m$, for all $m \in \mathbb{N}$, and for some constants α and β .*

⁵ For the general degree 2 case above we have $\chi(x) = x^2 - c_1 x - c_2$.

The constants are determined by the initial conditions (see equation 36.2).

Proof. If $a_m = \alpha r_1^m + \beta r_2^m$ for all $m \in \mathbb{N}$, where α and β are some constants, then since $r_i^2 - c_1 r_i - c_2 = 0$, we have $r_i^2 = c_1 r_i + c_2$, for $i = 1$ and $n = 2$. Hence, for $n \geq 2$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} c_1 a_{n-1} + c_2 a_{n-2} &= c_1 (\alpha r_1^{n-1} + \beta r_2^{n-1}) + c_2 (\alpha r_1^{n-2} + \beta r_2^{n-2}), \\ &= \alpha r_1^{n-2} (c_1 r_1 + c_2) + \beta r_2^{n-2} (c_1 r_2 + c_2), \text{ distributing and combining,} \\ &= \alpha r_1^{n-2} \cdot r_1^2 + \beta r_2^{n-2} \cdot r_2^2, \text{ by the remark above,} \\ &= \alpha r_1^n + \beta r_2^n = a_n. \end{aligned}$$

Conversely, if a is a solution of the recurrence relation and has initial terms a_0 and a_1 , then one checks that the sequence $a_m = \alpha r_1^m + \beta r_2^m$ with

$$\alpha = \frac{a_1 - a_0 \cdot r_2}{r_1 - r_2}, \text{ and } \beta = \frac{a_0 r_1 - a_1}{r_1 - r_2} \quad (36.2)$$

also satisfies the relation and has the same initial conditions. The equations

for α and β come from solving the system of linear equations

$$\begin{aligned}a_0 &= \alpha(r_1)^0 + \beta(r_2)^0 = \alpha + \beta, \\a_1 &= \alpha(r_1)^1 + \beta(r_2)^1 = \alpha r_1 + \beta r_2.\end{aligned}$$

This system is solved using techniques from a prerequisite course. ♣

Example 36.2. Solve the recurrence relation $a_0 = 2$, $a_1 = 3$ and $a_n = a_{n-2}$, for $n \geq 2$.

Solution. The recurrence relation is a linear homogeneous recurrence relation of degree 2 with constant coefficients $c_1 = 0$ and $c_2 = 1$. The characteristic polynomial is

$$\chi(x) = x^2 - 0 \cdot x - 1 = x^2 - 1.$$

The characteristic polynomial has two distinct roots since

$$x^2 - 1 = (x - 1)(x + 1).$$

Let's say $r_1 = 1$ and $r_2 = -1$. Then, we find the system of equations:

$$\begin{aligned}2 &= a_0 = \alpha 1^0 + \beta(-1)^0 = \alpha + \beta, \\3 &= a_1 = \alpha 1^1 + \beta(-1)^1 = \alpha + \beta(-1) = \alpha - \beta.\end{aligned}$$

Adding the two equations eliminates β and gives $5 = 2\alpha$, so $\alpha = 5/2$.

Substituting this into the first equation, $2 = 5/2 + \beta$, we see that $\beta = -1/2$. Thus, our solution is

$$a_n = \frac{5}{2} \cdot 1^n + \frac{-1}{2}(-1)^n = \frac{5}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \cdot (-1)^n.$$

Example 36.3. Solve the recurrence relation $a_1 = 3$, $a_2 = 5$, and,

$$a_n = 5a_{n-1} - 6a_{n-2}, \text{ for } n \geq 3.$$

Solution. Here the characteristic polynomial is

$$\chi(x) = x^2 - 5x + 6 = (x - 2)(x - 3),$$

with roots $r_1 = 2$ and $r_2 = 3$. Now, we suppose that

$$a_m = \alpha 2^m + \beta 3^m, \text{ for all } m \geq 1.$$

The initial conditions give rise to the system of equations

$$3 = a_1 = \alpha 2^1 + \beta 3^1 = 2\alpha + 3\beta,$$

$$5 = a_2 = \alpha 2^2 + \beta 3^2 = 4\alpha + 9\beta.$$

If we multiply the top equation through by 2, we obtain

$$6 = 4\alpha + 6\beta,$$

$$5 = 4\alpha + 9\beta.$$

Subtracting the second equation from the first eliminates α and yields

$1 = -3\beta$. So, we have found that $\beta = -1/3$. Substitution into the

first equation yields $3 = 2\alpha + 3 \cdot (-1/3)$, so $\alpha = 2$. Thus

$$a_m = 2 \cdot 2^m - \frac{1}{3} \cdot 3^m = 2^{m+1} - 3^{m-1}, \text{ for all } m \geq 1.$$

36.4 The method for repeated roots

The other case we mentioned had a characteristic polynomial of degree two with one repeated root. Since the proof is similar we simply state the theorem.

Theorem 36.4. Let c_1 and c_2 be real numbers with $c_2 \neq 0$ and suppose that the polynomial $x^2 - c_1x - c_2$ has a root r with multiplicity 2, so that $x^2 - c_1x - c_2 = (x - r)^2$. Then, a sequence $a : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a solution of the recurrence relation $a_n = c_1a_{n-1} + c_2a_{n-2}$, for $n \geq 2$ if and only if

$$a_m = (\alpha + \beta m)r^m,$$

for all $m \in \mathbb{N}$, and for some constants α and β .

Example 36.5. Solve the recurrence relation $a_0 = -1, a_1 = 4$ and $a_n = 4a_{n-1} - 4a_{n-2}$, for $n \geq 2$.

Solution. In this case we have $\chi(x) = x^2 - 4x + 4 = (x - 2)^2$. So, we

may suppose that

$$a_m = (\alpha + \beta m)2^m, \text{ for all } m \in \mathbb{N}.$$

The initial conditions give rise to the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned} -1 &= a_0 = (\alpha + \beta \cdot 0)2^0 = (\alpha) \cdot 1 = \alpha, \\ 4 &= a_1 = (\alpha + \beta \cdot 1)2^1 = 2(\alpha + \beta) \cdot 2. \end{aligned}$$

Substituting $\alpha = -1$ into the second equation gives $4 = 2(\beta - 1)$, so $2 = \beta - 1$ and $\beta = 3$. Therefore $a_m = (3m - 1)2^m$, for all $m \in \mathbb{N}$.

36.5 The general case

Finally, we state⁶ the general method of characteristic roots.

⁶ without proof

Theorem 36.6. Let $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k \in \mathbb{R}$ with $c_k \neq 0$. Suppose that the characteristic polynomial factors as

$$\begin{aligned} \chi(x) &= x^k - c_1x^{k-1} - c_2x^{k-2} - \dots - c_{k-1}x - c_k, \\ &= (x - r_1)^{j_1}(x - r_2)^{j_2} \dots (x - r_s)^{j_s}, \end{aligned}$$

where r_1, r_2, \dots, r_s are distinct roots of $\chi(x)$, and j_1, j_2, \dots, j_s are positive integers such that

$$j_1 + j_2 + j_3 + \dots + j_s = k.$$

Then a sequence $a : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a solution of the recurrence relation

$$a_n = c_1a_{n-1} + c_2a_{n-2} + \dots + c_ka_{n-k}, \text{ for } n \geq k$$

if and only if

$$a_m = p_1(m)r_1^m + p_2(m)r_2^m + \dots + p_s(m)r_s^m, \text{ for all } m \in \mathbb{N},$$

where

$$p_i(m) = \alpha_{0,i} + \alpha_{1,i}m + \alpha_{2,i}m^2 + \dots + \alpha_{j_i-1,i}m^{j_i-1}, \quad 1 \leq i \leq s$$

and the $\alpha_{1,i}$'s are constants.

There is a problem with the general case. It is true that given the recurrence relation we can simply write down the characteristic polynomial. However it can be quite a challenge to factor it as required by the theorem. Even if we succeed in factoring it we are faced with the tedious task of setting up and solving a system of k linear equations in k unknowns (the $\alpha_{l,i}$'s). While in theory such a system can be solved using the methods of elimination or substitution covered in a college algebra course, in practice, the amount of labor involved can become overwhelming. For this reason, computer algebra systems are often used in practice to help solve systems of equations, or even the original recurrence relation.

36.6 Exercises

Exercise 36.1. For each of the following sequences find a recurrence relation satisfied by the sequence. Include a sufficient number of initial conditions to completely specify the sequence.

(a) $a_n = 2n + 3, n \geq 0$

(b) $a_n = 3 \cdot 2^n, n \geq 1$

(c) $a_n = n^2, n \geq 1$

(d) $a_n = n + (-1)^n, n \geq 0$

Solve each of the following recurrence relations:

Exercise 36.2. $a_0 = 3, a_1 = 6$, and $a_n = a_{n-1} + 6a_{n-2}$, for $n \geq 2$.

Exercise 36.3. $a_0 = 4, a_1 = 7$, and $a_n = 5a_{n-1} - 6a_{n-2}$, for $n \geq 2$.

Exercise 36.4. $a_2 = 5, a_3 = 13$, and $a_n = 7a_{n-1} - 10a_{n-2}$, for $n \geq 4$.

Exercise 36.5. $a_1 = 3, a_2 = 5$, and $a_n = 4a_{n-1} - 4a_{n-2}$, for $n \geq 3$.

Exercise 36.6. $a_0 = 1, a_1 = 6$, and $a_n = 6a_{n-1} - 9a_{n-2}$, for $n \geq 2$.

Exercise 36.7. $a_1 = 2, a_2 = 8$, and $a_n = a_{n-2}$, for $n \geq 3$.

Exercise 36.8. $a_0 = 2, a_1 = 5, a_2 = 15$, and $a_n = 6a_{n-1} - 11a_{n-2} + 6a_{n-3}$, for $n \geq 3$.

Exercise 36.9. Find a closed form formula for the terms of the Fibonacci sequence: $f_0 = 0, f_1 = 1$, and for $n \geq 2, f_n = f_{n-1} + f_{n-2}$.

37

Solving Nonhomogeneous Recurrences

WHEN A LINEAR RECURRENCE RELATION with constant coefficients for a sequence $\{s_n\}$ looks like

$$s_n = c_1s_{n-1} + c_2s_{n-2} + \cdots + c_k s_{n-k} + f(n),$$

where $f(n)$ is some (nonzero) function of n , then the recurrence relation is said to be **nonhomogeneous**. For example, $s_n = 2s_{n-1} + n^2 + 1$ is a nonhomogeneous recurrence. Here $f(n) = n^2 + 1$. The methods used in the last chapter are not adequate to deal with nonhomogeneous problems. But it wasn't all a waste since those methods do provide one step in the solution of nonhomogeneous problems.

37.1 Steps to solve nonhomogeneous recurrence relations

Step (1): Replace the $f(n)$ by 0 to create a homogeneous recurrence relation,

$$s_n = c_1s_{n-1} + c_2s_{n-2} + \cdots + c_k s_{n-k}.$$

Now solve this and write down the general solution¹. For example, in the case of no repeated roots, the general solution will look something like:

$$s_n = a_1r_1^n + a_2r_2^n + \cdots + a_k r_k^n,$$

where the constants a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k are to be determined.

¹ We learned to do this in chapter 36.

Step (2): Next, find one **particular solution** to the original nonhomogeneous recursion. In other words, one specific sequence that obeys the recursive formula (ignoring the initial conditions). A method for finding a particular solution that works in many cases is to guess! Actually, it is to make an educated guess. Reasonable guesses depend on the form of $f(n)$. There is an algorithm that will produce the correct guess, but it is so complicated it isn't worth learning for the few simple examples we will be doing. Instead, rely on the following guidelines to guess the form of a particular solution.

Roughly, the plan is to guess a particular solution that is the most general function of the same type as $f(n)$. Specifically, table 37.1 shows reasonable guesses.

These guesses can be *mixed-and-matched*. For example, if

$$f(n) = 3n^2 + 5^n,$$

then a reasonable candidate particular solution would be

$$An^2 + Bn + C + D5^n.$$

Once a guess has been made for the form of a particular solution, that guess is plugged into the recurrence relation, and the coefficients A, B, \dots are determined. In this way a specific particular solution will be found.

It will sometimes happen that when the equations are set up to determine the coefficients of the particular solution, an inconsistent system will appear. In such a case, as with repeated characteristic roots, the trick is (more-or-less) to multiply the guess for the particular solution by n , and try again.

Step (3): Once a particular solution has been found, add the particular solution of step (2) to the general solution of the homogeneous recurrence found in step (1). If we denote a particular solution by $h(n)$, then the total general solution looks like

$$s_n = a_1r_1^n + a_2r_2^n + \dots + a_kr_k^n + h(n).$$

$f(n)$	Particular Solution Guess
c (a constant)	A (constant)
n	$An + B$
n^2	$An^2 + Bn + C$
n^3	$An^3 + Bn^2 + Cn + D$
2^n	$A2^n$
r^n (r constant)	Ar^n

Table 37.1: Particular solution patterns

Step (4): Invoke the initial conditions to determine the values of the coefficients a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k just as we did for the homogeneous problems in chapter 36.

The major oversight made solving a nonhomogeneous recurrence relation is trying to determine the coefficients a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k before the particular solution is added to the general solution. This mistake will usually lead to inconsistent information about the coefficients, and no solution to the recurrence will be found.

37.2 Examples

Example 37.1. *Let's solve the Tower of Hanoi recurrence using this method.*

The recurrence is $H_0 = 0$, and, for $n \geq 1$, $H_n = 2H_{n-1} + 1$. We know the closed form formula for H_n is $2^n - 1$ already, but let's work it out using the method outlined above.

Step (1): *Find the general solution of related homogeneous recursion (indicated by the superscript (h)): $H_n^{(h)} = 2H_{n-1}^{(h)}$. That will be $H_n^{(h)} = A2^n$.*

Step (2): *Guess the particular solution (indicated by superscript (p)): $H_n^{(p)} = B$, a constant. Plugging that guess into the recurrence gives $B = 2B + 1$, and so we see $B = -1$.*

Step (3): *Hence, the general solution to the Tower of Hanoi recurrence is*

$$H_n = H_n^{(h)} + H_n^{(p)} = A2^n - 1.$$

Step (4): *Now, use the initial condition to determine A: When $n = 0$, we want $0 = A2^0 - 1$ which means $A = 1$. Thus, we find the expected result:*

$$H_n = 2^n - 1, \text{ for } n \geq 0.$$

Example 37.2. Here is a more complicated example worked out in detail to exhibit the method. Let's solve the recurrence

$$s_1 = 2, \quad s_2 = 5 \quad \text{and,}$$

$$s_n = s_{n-1} + 6s_{n-2} + 3n - 1, \quad \text{for } n \geq 3.$$

Step (1): Find the general solution of $s_n = s_{n-1} + 6s_{n-2}$. After finding the characteristic equation, and the characteristic roots, the general solution turns out to be $s_n = a_1 3^n + a_2 (-2)^n$.

Step (2): To find a particular solution let's guess that there is a solution $h(n)$ that looks like $h(n) = an + b$, where a and b are to be determined. To find values of a and b that work, we substitute this guess for a solution into the original recurrence relation. In this case, the result of plugging in the guess ($s_n = h(n) = an + b$) gives us:

$$an + b = a(n-1) + b + 6(a(n-2) + b) + 3n - 1.$$

which can be rearranged to

$$(6a + 3)n + (-13a + 6b - 1) = 0.$$

If this equation is to be correct for all n , then, in particular, it must be correct when $n = 0$ and when $n = 1$, and that tells us that

$$-13a + 6b - 1 = 0 \quad \text{and,}$$

$$6a + 3 - 13a + 6b - 1 = 0.$$

Solving this pair of equations we find $a = -\frac{1}{2}$ and $b = -\frac{11}{12}$. And, sure enough, if you plug this alleged solution into the original recurrence, you will see it checks.

Step (3): Write down the general solution to the original nonhomogeneous problem by adding the particular solution of step (2) to the general solution from step (1) getting:

$$s_n = a_1 3^n + a_2 (-2)^n + \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)n + \left(-\frac{11}{12}\right).$$

Step (4): Now a_1, a_2 can be calculated: For $n = 1$, the first initial condition gives

$$2 = a_1 3^1 + a_2 (-2)^1 + \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) 1 + \left(-\frac{11}{12}\right),$$

and for $n = 2$, we get

$$5 = a_1 3^2 + a_2 (-2)^2 + \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) 2 + \left(-\frac{11}{12}\right).$$

Solving these two equations for a_1 and a_2 , we find that $a_1 = \frac{11}{12}$ and $a_2 = -\frac{1}{3}$.

So the solution to the recurrence is

$$s_n = \frac{11}{12} 3^n - \frac{1}{3} (-2)^n + \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) n + \left(-\frac{11}{12}\right).$$

37.3 Exercises

Use the general solutions for the related homogeneous problems of chapter 36 to help solve the following nonhomogeneous recurrence relations with initial conditions.

Exercise 37.1. $a_0 = 3, a_1 = 6$ and $a_n = a_{n-1} + 6a_{n-2} + 1$, for $n \geq 2$.

Exercise 37.2. $a_2 = 5, a_3 = 13$ and $a_n = 7a_{n-1} - 10a_{n-2} + n$, for $n \geq 4$.

Exercise 37.3. $a_0 = 0, a_1 = 1$ and $a_n = 4a_{n-1} - 4a_{n-2} + 2^n$, for $n \geq 2$.

Exercise 37.4. $a_0 = 1, a_1 = 6$ and $a_n = 6a_{n-1} - 9a_{n-2} + n$, for $n \geq 2$.

Exercise 37.5. $a_0 = 2, a_1 = 5, a_2 = 15$, and $a_n = 6a_{n-1} - 11a_{n-2} + 6a_{n-3} + 2n + 1$, for $n \geq 3$.

Graphs

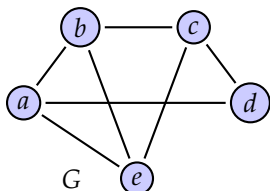
IN AN EARLIER CHAPTER WE REPRESENTED RELATIONS WITH A GRAPH. IN THIS CHAPTER WE DISCUSS A MORE GENERAL NOTION OF A GRAPH.

38.1 *Some Graph Terminology*

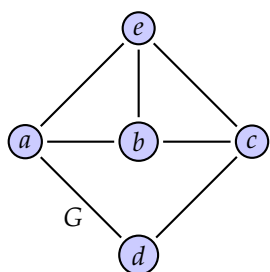
There is a lot of new vocabulary to absorb concerning graphs! For this chapter, a **graph** will consist of a number of points (called **vertices**) (singular: **vertex**) together with lines (called **edges**) joining some (possibly none, possibly all) pairs of vertices. Unlike the graphs of earlier chapters, we will not allow an edge from a vertex back to itself (so no loops allowed), we will not allow multiple edges between vertices, and the edges will not be directed (there will be no edges with arrowheads on one or both ends). All of our graphs will have a finite vertex sets, and consequently a finite number of edges. Graphs are typically denoted by an uppercase letter such as G or H .

If you would like a formal definition: a **graph**, G consists of a set of vertices V and a set E of edges, where an edge $t \in E$ is written as an unordered pair of vertices $\{u, v\}$, (in other words, a set consisting of two different vertices). We say that the edge $t = \{u, v\}$ has **end-points** u and v , and that the edge t is **incident** to both u and v . The vertices u and v are **adjacent** when there is an edge with endpoints u and v ; otherwise they are not adjacent. Such a formal definition is necessary, but a more helpful way to think of a graph is as a diagram.

Here is an example of a graph G with vertex set $\{a, b, c, d, e\}$ illustrating these concepts.



The placement of the vertices in a diagram representing a graph is (within reason!) not important. Here is another diagram of that same graph G .



In this diagram, we again have vertex set a, b, c, d, e , and edges $\{a, b\}, \{b, c\}, \{c, d\}, \{a, d\}, \{a, e\}, \{b, e\}, \{c, e\}$, and that is all that matters. It is a good idea to draw a diagram that is easy to understand! In particular, while any curve can be used to represent an edge between two vertices, whenever it is reasonable, edges are normally drawn as straight lines. The vertices b and e are adjacent and the vertices b and d are not adjacent. The vertices a and c are not adjacent since there is no edge $\{a, c\}$. If we use s to denote the edge joining b to c , then s has endpoints b and c , and s is incident to b and c .

Applying the *a-picture-is-worth-a-thousand-words* principle, for the small graphs we will be working with, a graph diagram is generally the easiest way to represent a graph.

38.1.1 Representing a graph in a computer

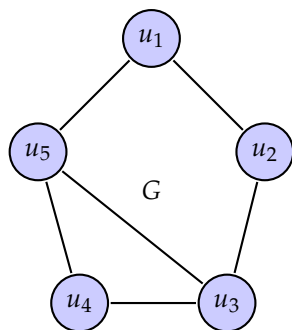
There are two standard ways to represent a graph in computer memory, both involving matrices (in other words, tables of numbers).

The matrices are of a special type called 0, 1-matrices since the table entries will all be either 0 or 1.

Adjacency matrix: If there are n vertices in the graph G , the adjacency matrix is an n by n square table of numbers. The rows and columns of the table are labeled with the symbols used to name the vertices. The names are used in the same order for the rows and columns, so there are $n!$ possible labelings. Often there will be some *natural* choice of the order of the labels, such as alphabetic or numeric order. The entries in the table are determined as follows: the matrix entry with row label x and column label y is 1 if x and y are adjacent, and 0 otherwise.

Incidence matrix: Suppose the graph G has n vertices and m edges. The table will have n rows, labeled with the names of the vertices, and m columns labeled with the edges. Which of the $n!m!$ possible orderings of these labelings has to be specified in some way. The entry in the row labeled with vertex u and column labeled with edge e is 1 if e is incident with u , and 0 otherwise. Since every edge is incident to exactly two vertices, every column of the incidence matrix will have exactly two 1's.

Example 38.1. Let G have vertex set $\{u_1, u_2, u_3, u_4, u_5\}$ and edges $\{u_1, u_2\}, \{u_2, u_3\}, \{u_3, u_4\}, \{u_4, u_5\}, \{u_5, u_1\}, \{u_5, u_3\}$. A graphical representation of G is



Here are the adjacency matrix A_G , and the incidence matrix M_G of G using the vertices and edges in the orders given above.

$$A_G = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad M_G = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

38.2 An Historical Interlude: The origin of graph theory

Unlike most areas of mathematics, it is possible to point to a specific person as the creator of graph theory and a specific problem that led to its creation. On the following pages the *Seven Bridges of Königsberg* problem and the graph theoretic approach to a solution provided by Leonard Euler in 1736 is described.

The notion of a graph discussed in the article is a little more general than the graphs we will be working with in the chapter. To model the bridge problem as a graph, Euler allowed multiple edges between vertices. In modern terminology, graphs with multiple edges are called **multigraphs**.

While we are on the topic of extensions of the definition of a graph, let's also mention the case of graphs with *loops*. Here we allow an edge to connect a vertex to itself, forming a loop. Multigraphs with loops allowed are called **pseudographs**. Another generalization of the basic concept of a graph is **hypergraph**: in a hypergraph, a single edge is allowed to connect not just two, but any number of vertices.

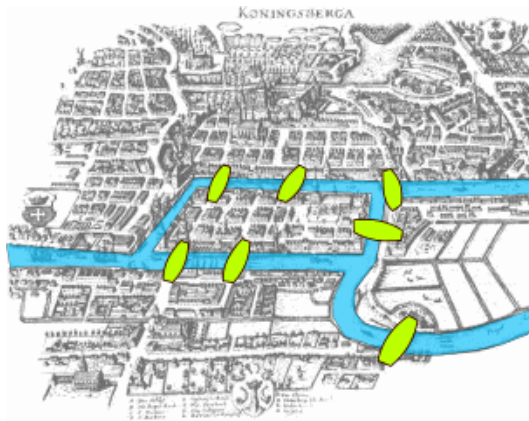
Finally, for all these various types of graphs, we can consider the **directed** versions in which the edges are given arrowheads on one or both ends to indicate the permitted direction of travel along that edge.

In the following article, multigraphs are employed. *But after the article we will again refer only to graphs with no multiple edges and no loops.*

Seven Bridges of Königsberg

This article is about an abstract problem. For the historical group of bridges in the city once known as Königsberg, and those of them that still exist, see § Present state of the bridges.

The **Seven Bridges of Königsberg** is a historically no-



Map of Königsberg in Euler's time showing the actual layout of the seven bridges, highlighting the river Pregel and the bridges

table problem in mathematics. Its negative resolution by Leonhard Euler in 1736 laid the foundations of graph theory and prefigured the idea of topology.^[1]

The city of Königsberg in Prussia (now Kaliningrad, Russia) was set on both sides of the Pregel River, and included two large islands which were connected to each other, or to the two mainland portions of the city, by seven bridges. The problem was to devise a walk through the city that would cross each of those bridges once and only once.

By way of specifying the logical task unambiguously, solutions involving either

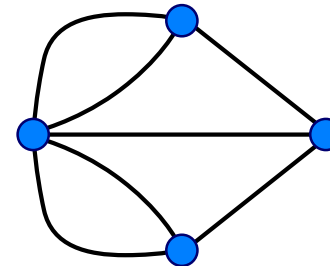
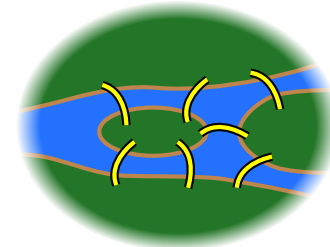
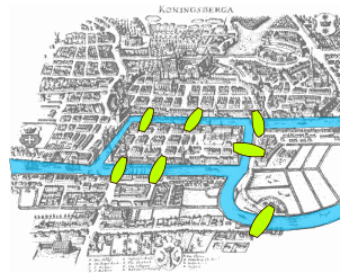
1. reaching an island or mainland bank other than via one of the bridges, or
2. accessing any bridge without crossing to its other end

are explicitly unacceptable.

Euler proved that the problem has no solution. The difficulty he faced was the development of a suitable technique of analysis, and of subsequent tests that established this assertion with mathematical rigor.

1 Euler's analysis

First, Euler pointed out that the choice of route inside each land mass is irrelevant. The only important feature of a route is the sequence of bridges crossed. This allowed him to reformulate the problem in abstract terms (laying the foundations of graph theory), eliminating all features except the list of land masses and the bridges connecting them. In modern terms, one replaces each land mass with an abstract "vertex" or node, and each bridge with an abstract connection, an "edge", which only serves to record which pair of vertices (land masses) is connected by that bridge. The resulting mathematical structure is called a graph.



Since only the connection information is relevant, the shape of pictorial representations of a graph may be distorted in any way, without changing the graph itself. Only the existence (or absence) of an edge between each pair of nodes is significant. For example, it does not matter whether the edges drawn are straight or curved, or whether one node is to the left or right of another.

Next, Euler observed that (except at the endpoints of the walk), whenever one enters a vertex by a bridge, one leaves the vertex by a bridge. In other words, during any walk in the graph, the number of times one enters a non-terminal vertex equals the number of times one leaves it. Now, if every bridge has been traversed exactly once, it follows that, for each land mass (except for the ones chosen for the start and finish), the number of bridges touching that land mass must be *even* (half of them, in the particular traversal, will be traversed “toward” the landmass; the other half, “away” from it). However, all four of the land masses in the original problem are touched by an *odd* number of bridges (one is touched by 5 bridges, and each of the other three is touched by 3). Since, at most, two land masses can serve as the endpoints of a walk, the proposition of a walk traversing each bridge once leads to a contradiction.

In modern language, Euler shows that the possibility of a walk through a graph, traversing each edge exactly once, depends on the *degrees* of the nodes. The degree of a node is the number of edges touching it. Euler’s argument shows that a necessary condition for the walk of the desired form is that the graph be connected and have exactly zero or two nodes of odd degree. This condition turns out also to be sufficient—a result stated by Euler and later proven by Carl Hierholzer. Such a walk is now called an *Eulerian path* or *Euler walk* in his honor. Further, if there are nodes of odd degree, then any Eulerian path will start at one of them and end at the other. Since the graph corresponding to historical Königsberg has four nodes of odd degree, it cannot have an Eulerian path.

An alternative form of the problem asks for a path that traverses all bridges and also has the same starting and ending point. Such a walk is called an *Eulerian circuit* or an *Euler tour*. Such a circuit exists if, and only if, the graph is connected, and there are no nodes of odd degree at all. All Eulerian circuits are also Eulerian paths, but not all Eulerian paths are Eulerian circuits.

Euler’s work was presented to the St. Petersburg Academy on 26 August 1735, and published as *Solutio problematis ad geometriam situs pertinentis* (The solution of a problem relating to the geometry of position) in the journal *Commentarii academiae scientiarum Petropolitanae* in 1741.^[2] It is available in English in *The World of Mathematics*.

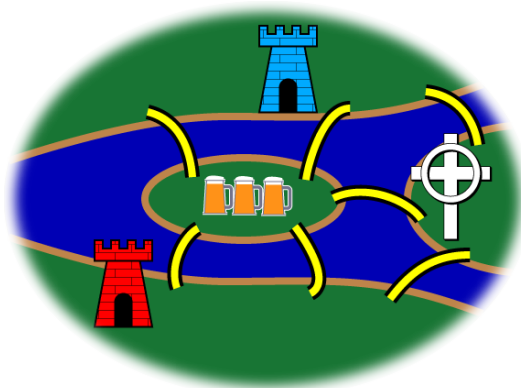
2 Significance in the history of mathematics

In the history of mathematics, Euler’s solution of the Königsberg bridge problem is considered to be the first theorem of graph theory and the first true proof in the theory of networks,^[3] a subject now generally regarded as a branch of combinatorics. Combinatorial problems of other types had been considered since antiquity.

In addition, Euler’s recognition that the key information was the number of bridges and the list of their endpoints (rather than their exact positions) presaged the development of *topology*. The difference between the actual layout and the graph schematic is a good example of the idea that topology is not concerned with the rigid shape of objects.

3 Variations

The classic statement of the problem, given above, uses **unidentified** nodes—that is, they are all alike except for the way in which they are connected. There is a variation in which the nodes are **identified**—each node is given a unique name or color.



A variant with red and blue castles, a church and an inn.

The northern bank of the river is occupied by the *Schloß*, or castle, of the Blue Prince; the southern by that of the Red Prince. The east bank is home to the Bishop’s *Kirche*, or church; and on the small island in the center is a *Gasthaus*, or inn.

It is understood that the problems to follow should be taken in order, and begin with a statement of the original problem:

It being customary among the townsmen, after some hours in the *Gasthaus*, to attempt to **walk the bridges**, many have returned for more refreshment claiming success. However, none have been able to repeat the feat by the light of day.

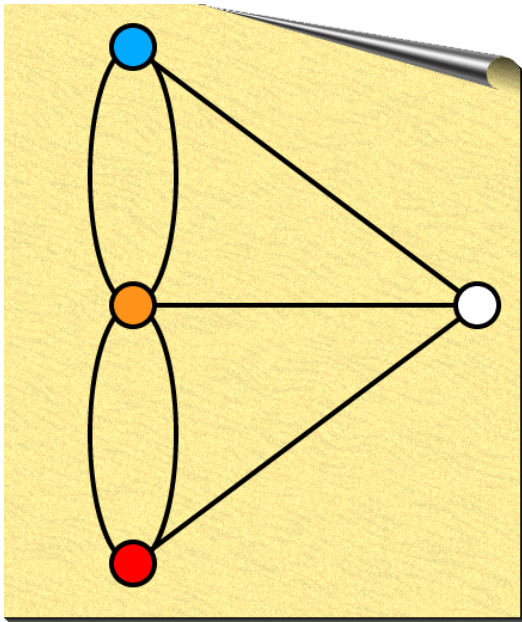
Bridge 8: The Blue Prince, having analyzed the town’s bridge system by means of graph theory, concludes that the bridges cannot be walked. He contrives a stealthy plan to build an eighth bridge so that he can begin in the evening at his *Schloß*, walk the bridges, and end at the *Gasthaus* to brag of his victory. Of course, he wants the Red Prince to be unable to duplicate the feat from the Red Castle. *Where does the Blue Prince build the eighth bridge?*

Bridge 9: The Red Prince, infuriated by his brother’s

Gordian solution to the problem, wants to build a ninth bridge, enabling *him* to begin at his *Schloß*, walk the bridges, and end at the *Gasthaus* to rub dirt in his brother's face. As an extra bit of revenge, his brother should then no longer be able to walk the bridges starting at his *Schloß* and ending at the *Gasthaus* as before. *Where does the Red Prince build the ninth bridge?*

Bridge 10: The Bishop has watched this furious bridge-building with dismay. It upsets the town's *Weltanschauung* and, worse, contributes to excessive drunkenness. He wants to build a tenth bridge that allows *all* the inhabitants to walk the bridges and return to their own beds. *Where does the Bishop build the tenth bridge?*

3.1 Solutions

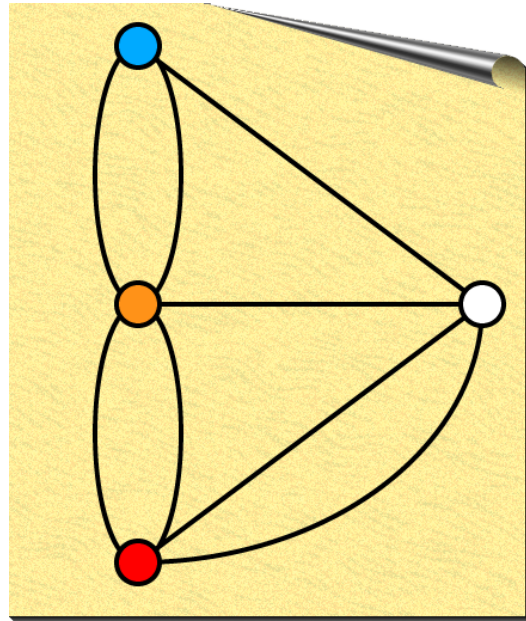


The colored graph

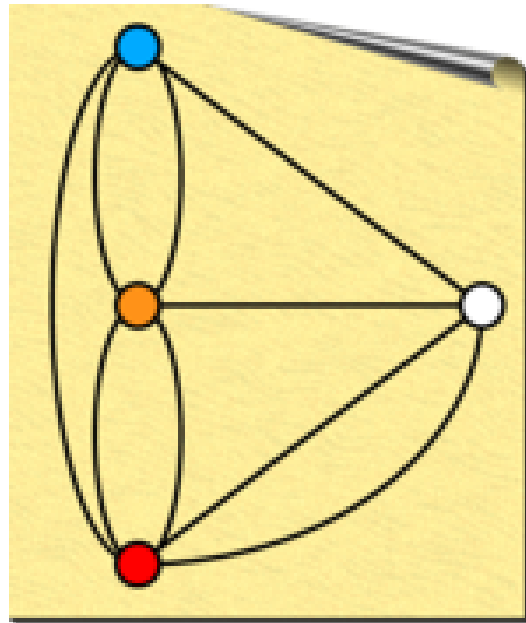
Reduce the city, as before, to a graph. Color each node. As in the classic problem, no Euler walk is possible; coloring does not affect this. All four nodes have an odd number of edges.

Bridge 8: Euler walks are possible if exactly zero or two nodes have an odd number of edges. If we have 2 nodes with an odd number of edges, the walk must begin at one such node and end at the other. Since there are only 4 nodes in the puzzle, the solution is simple. The walk desired must begin at the blue node and end at the orange node. Thus, a new edge is drawn between the other two nodes. Since they each formerly had an odd number of edges, they must now have an even number of edges, fulfilling all conditions. This is a change in parity from an odd to even degree.

Bridge 9: The 9th bridge is easy once the 8th is solved.



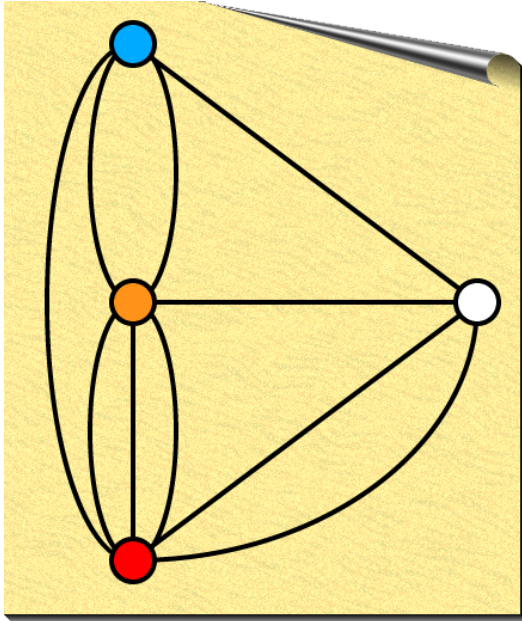
The 8th edge



The 9th edge

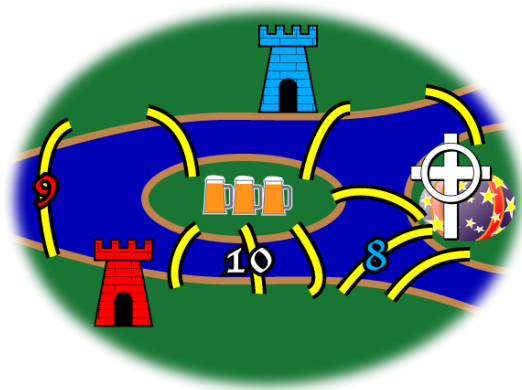
The desire is to enable the red castle and forbid the blue castle as a starting point; the orange node remains the end of the walk and the white node is unaffected. To change the parity of both red and blue nodes, draw a new edge between them.

Bridge 10: The 10th bridge takes us in a slightly different direction. The Bishop wishes every citizen to return to his starting point. This is an Euler circuit and requires that all nodes be of even degree. After the solution of the 9th bridge, the red and the orange nodes have odd degree,



The 10th edge

so their parity must be changed by adding a new edge between them.

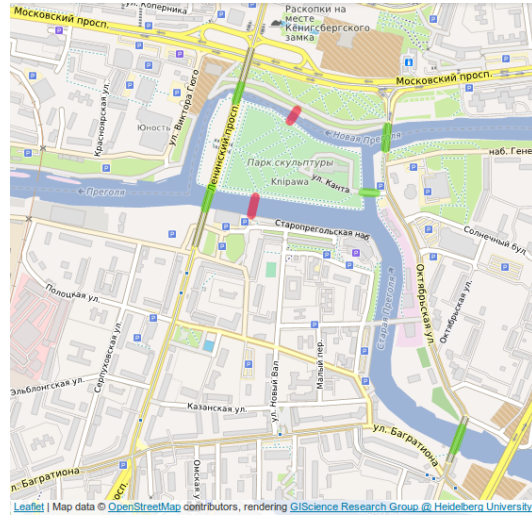


8th, 9th, and 10th bridges

4 Present state of the bridges

Two of the seven original bridges did not survive the bombing of Königsberg in World War II. Two others were later demolished and replaced by a modern highway. The three other bridges remain, although only two of them are from Euler's time (one was rebuilt in 1935).^[4] Thus, as of 2000, there are five bridges in Kaliningrad that were a part of the Euler's problem.

In terms of graph theory, two of the nodes now have degree 2, and the other two have degree 3. Therefore, an Eulerian path is now possible, but it must begin on one island and end on the other.^[5]



Modern map of Kaliningrad. Locations of the remaining bridges are highlighted in green, while those destroyed are highlighted in red.

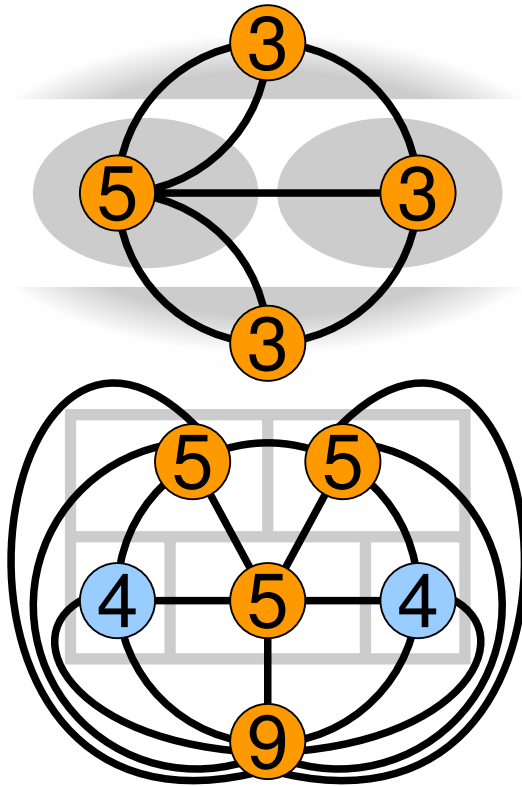
Canterbury University in Christchurch, New Zealand, has incorporated a model of the bridges into a grass area between the old Physical Sciences Library and the Erskine Building, housing the Departments of Mathematics, Statistics and Computer Science.^[6] The rivers are replaced with short bushes and the central island sports a stone tōrō. Rochester Institute of Technology has incorporated the puzzle into the pavement in front of the Gene Polisseni Center, an ice hockey arena that opened in 2014.^[7]

5 See also

- Eulerian path
- Five room puzzle
- Glossary of graph theory
- Hamiltonian path
- Icosian game
- Water, gas, and electricity

6 References

- [1] See Shields, Rob (December 2012). 'Cultural Topology: The Seven Bridges of Königsburg 1736' in Theory Culture and Society 29, pp.43-57 and in versions online for a discussion of the social significance of Euler's engagement with this popular problem and its significance as an example of (proto-)topological understanding applied to everyday life.



- Euler's original publication (in Latin)
- The Bridges of Königsberg
- How the bridges of Königsberg help to understand the brain
- Euler's Königsberg's Bridges Problem at Math Dept. Contra Costa College
- Pregel – A Google graphing tool named after this problem

Coordinates: $54^{\circ}42'12''\text{N}$ $20^{\circ}30'56''\text{E}$ / 54.70333°N 20.51556°E

Comparison of the graphs of the Seven bridges of Königsberg (top) and Five-room puzzles (bottom). The numbers denote the number of edges connected to each node. Nodes with an odd number of edges are shaded orange.

- [2] The Euler Archive, commentary on publication, and original text, in Latin.
- [3] Newman, M. E. J. *The structure and function of complex networks* (PDF). Department of Physics, University of Michigan.
- [4] Taylor, Peter (December 2000). "What Ever Happened to Those Bridges?". Australian Mathematics Trust. Archived from the original on 19 March 2012. Retrieved 11 November 2006.
- [5] Stallmann, Matthias (July 2006). "The 7/5 Bridges of Koenigsberg/Kaliningrad". Retrieved 11 November 2006.
- [6] "About – Mathematics and Statistics – University of Canterbury". *math.canterbury.ac.nz*. Retrieved 4 November 2010.
- [7] <https://twitter.com/ritwhky/status/501529429185945600>

7 External links

- Kaliningrad and the Königsberg Bridge Problem at Convergence

8 Text and image sources, contributors, and licenses

8.1 Text

- **Seven Bridges of Königsberg** *Source:* https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Seven_Bridges_of_K%C3%B6nigsberg?oldid=759230125 *Contributors:* Zundark, Eclectology, Deb, D, Michael Hardy, Chris-martin, Gabbe, Seav, Den fjättrade ankan-enwiki, Mark Foskey, Bogdan-giusca, Berteun, Ed Cormany, Reddi, Dysprosia, Wik, Shizhao, AnonMoos, Jerzy, Robbot, Murray Langton, Fredrik, Donreed, Altenmann, Kneiphof, Bkell, Matt Gies, Giftlite, JamesMLane, Harp, MSGJ, Dratman, Finn-Zoltan, Macrakis, Matthead, Gadium, Antandrus, DRE, Icairms, Ukexpat, Clubjuggle, Deadlock, Wikiacc, Ascánder, Bender235, Shanes, C S, Blotwell, La goutte de pluie, AllTom, Arthema, Keenan Pepper, Cdc, Americanadian, Oghmoir, Gene Nygaard, Alai, Ghirlandajo, Hq3473, Jfhsang, Apokrif, Tabletop, Cbdorsett, Audiovideo, Xiong, Marudubshinki, StefanFuhrmann-enwiki, Graham87, BD2412, Qwertyus, Salix alba, Mkehr, FlaBot, Gurch, Bgwhite, YurikBot, Wavelength, Hairy Dude, Snillet, Michael Slone, Sikon, Stallions2010, CptnMisc, Arthur Rubin, Cmglee, DVD R W, Smack-Bot, McGeddon, Stegano-enwiki, Wzhao553, Betacommand, Anachronist, Bird of paradox, Thumperward, DHN-bot-enwiki, Scray, John Reid, LtPowers, John, JLeander, NongBot-enwiki, DaBjork, TheFarix, BranStark, Dilip rajeev, Eyefragment, Courcelles, Stuart Wim-bush, CmdrObot, Ivan Pozdeev, Phauly, Nalpdii-enwiki, Nczempin, WLior, Iempleh, Thijs!bot, Headbomb, Lethargy, Gswitz, Seaphoto, Smith2006, Hurmari, JAnDbot, MER-C, CheMechanical, The Anomebot2, David Eppstein, WPaulB, DerHexer, Gwern, LapisQuem, R'n'B, CommonsDelinker, Nev1, Maproom, Smitty, Independentdependent, TXiKiBoT, David Condrey, LFStokols, Falcon8765, Dusti, YonaBot, Hertz1888, Triwbe, Smsarmad, Foljiny, Ctxppc, Ken123BOT, Nic bor, Mikeharris111, Pnijssen, ClueBot, K14m, CounterVan-dalismBot, Piledhigheranddeeper, Excirial, Steveheric, Manu-ve Pro Ski, Jth1994, Addbot, Andunie, Godwin100, Foftry55i6, LinkFA-Bot, Numbo3-bot, Komischn, PV=nRT, Teles, Zorrobot, Luckas-bot, Yobot, AnakngAraw, Ciphers, MaterialsScientist, Smlit, ArthurBot, Obersachsebot, Xqbot, Zevyefa, RibotBOT, Tmgreen, Zmorell, Chenopodiaceous, AstaBOTh15, Winterst, MarcelB612, Bmclaughlin9, Serols, Christopher1968, MFrawn, Nascar1996, Deadlyops, WikitanvirBot, TuHan-Bot, Thecheesykid, Cobaltcigs, Donaldm314, Donner60, Scientific29, Orange Suede Sofa, Haythamdouaihy, ClueBot NG, Lord Chamberlain, the Renowned, Vacation9, Santacloud, Ianr790, Athos, MusikAnimal, Cyberbot II, Dexbot, Hmainsbot1, Christallkeks, RockvilleRideOn, Ynaamad, MasterTriangle12, Monkbot, Acekqj, Blois2014, Imdifferentyo123456789, Poppy sheppard and Anonymous: 170

8.2 Images

- **File:7_bridges.svg** *Source:* https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/9/91/7_bridges.svg *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:7_bridgesID.png** *Source:* https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/b3/7_bridgesID.png *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* Transferred from en.wikipedia to Commons. *Original artist:* The original uploader was Xiong at English Wikipedia
- **File:7b-graph09.png** *Source:* <https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/69/7b-graph09.png> *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* Transferred from en.wikipedia to Commons. *Original artist:* Xiong at English Wikipedia
- **File:Commons-logo.svg** *Source:* <https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/4/4a/Commons-logo.svg> *License:* PD *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Comparison_7_bridges_of_Konigsberg_5_room_puzzle_graphs.svg** *Source:* https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/f/fb/Comparison_7_bridges_of_Konigsberg_5_room_puzzle_graphs.svg *License:* CC BY-SA 3.0 *Contributors:* Own work *Original artist:* Cmglee
- **File:Koenigsberg_Bridges_Variations_Graph10.png** *Source:* https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/b7/Koenigsberg_Bridges_Variations_Graph10.png *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Koenigsberg_Bridges_Variations_Graph7.png** *Source:* https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/a/af/Koenigsberg_Bridges_Variations_Graph7.png *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Koenigsberg_Bridges_Variations_Graph8.png** *Source:* https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/9/90/Koenigsberg_Bridges_Variations_Graph8.png *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Koenigsberg_Bridges_Variations_Problem.png** *Source:* https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/66/Koenigsberg_Bridges_Variations_Problem.png *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* Transferred from en.wikipedia to Commons by Legoktm using CommonsHelper. *Original artist:* Xiong at English Wikipedia
- **File:Konigsberg_bridges.png** *Source:* https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/5/5d/Konigsberg_bridges.png *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* Public domain (PD), based on the image
 - ``

Original artist: Bogdan Giuscă

- **File:Königsberg_graph.svg** *Source:* https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/9/96/K%C3%B6nigsberg_graph.svg *License:* CC-BY-SA-3.0 *Contributors:* ? *Original artist:* ?
- **File:Present_state_of_the_Seven_Bridges_of_Königsberg.png** *Source:* https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/e/e8/Present_state_of_the_Seven_Bridges_of_K%C3%B6nigsberg.png *License:* CC BY-SA 2.5 *Contributors:* <http://openstreetmap.ru/#map=15/54.7044/20.5175&layer=S> *Original artist:* Map data by OpenStreetMap contributors; rendering by GIScience Research Group @ Heidelberg University; produced work by Santacloud

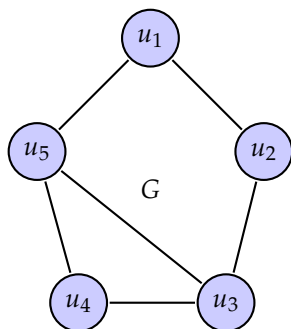
- **File:Question_book-new.svg** *Source:* https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/9/99/Question_book-new.svg *License:* Cc-by-sa-3.0
Contributors:
Created from scratch in Adobe Illustrator. Based on Image:Question book.png created by User:Equazcion *Original artist:*
Tkgd2007

8.3 Content license

- Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0

38.3 The First Theorem of Graph Theory

For a vertex v in a graph we denote the number of edges incident to v as the **degree** of v , written as $\deg(v)$. For example, consider the graph



Vertices u_1, u_2, u_4 each have degree 2, while $\deg(u_3)$ and $\deg(u_5)$ are each 3. The list of the degrees of the vertices of a graph is called the **degree sequence** of the graph. The degrees are traditionally listed in increasing order. So the degree sequence of the graph G above is 2, 2, 2, 3, 3.

The following theorem is usually referred to as the *First Theorem of Graph Theory*

Theorem 38.2. *The sum of the degrees of the vertices of a graph equals twice the number of edges. In particular, the sum of the degrees is even.*

Proof. Notice that when adding the degrees for the vertices, each edge is counted exactly twice, once for each endpoint. So the sum of the degrees is twice the number of edges. ♣

For example, in the graph G above, there are 6 edges, and the sum of the degrees of the vertices is $2 + 2 + 2 + 3 + 3 = 12 = 2(6)$.

Corollary 38.3. *A graph must have an even number of vertices of odd degree.*

Proof. Split the vertices into two groups: the vertices with even degree and the vertices with odd degree. The sum of all the degrees is even, and the sum of all the even degrees is also even. That implies that the sum of all the odd degrees must also be even. Since an odd number of odd integers adds up to an odd integer, it must be that there is an even number of odd degrees. ♣

38.4 A Brief Catalog of Special Graphs

It is convenient to have names for some particular types of graphs that occur frequently.

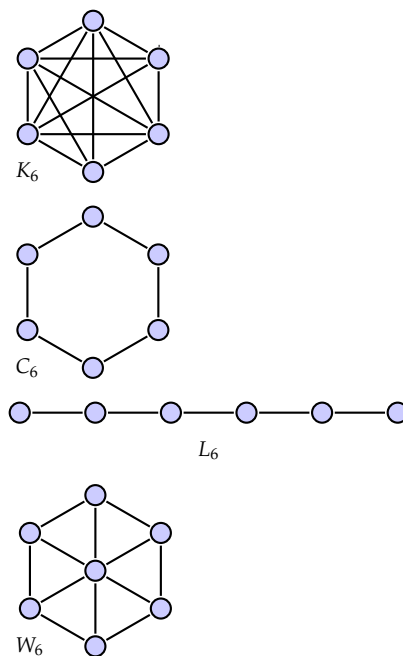
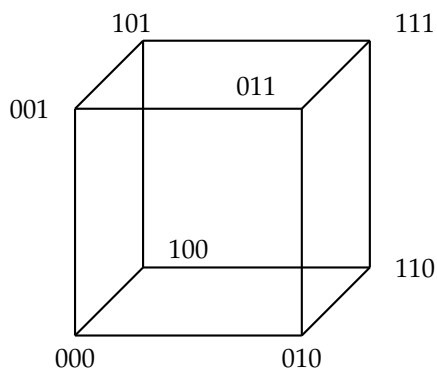
For $n \geq 1$, K_n denotes the graph with n vertices where every pair of vertices is adjacent. K_n is the **complete graph** on n vertices. So K_n is the largest possible graph with n vertices in the sense that it has the maximum possible number of edges.

For $n \geq 3$, C_n denotes the graph with n vertices, v_1, \dots, v_n , where each vertex in that list is adjacent to the vertex that follows it and v_n is adjacent to v_1 . The graph C_n is called the **n -cycle**. The graph C_3 is called a **triangle**.

For $n \geq 2$, L_n denotes the **n -link**. An n -link is a row of n vertices with each vertex adjacent to the following vertex. Alternatively, for $n \geq 3$, an n -link is produced by erasing one edge from an n -cycle.

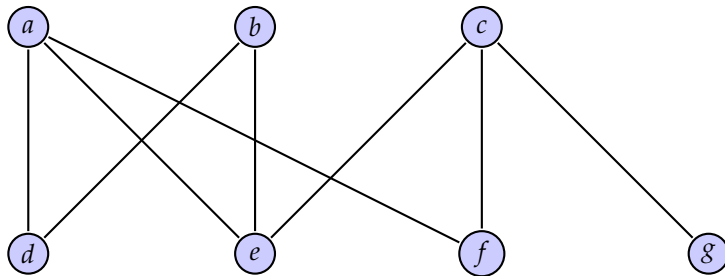
For $n \geq 3$, W_n denotes the **n -wheel**. To form W_n add one vertex to C_n and make it adjacent to every other vertex. Notice that the n -wheel has $n + 1$ vertices.

For $n \geq 1$, the **n -cube**, Q_n , is the graph whose vertices are labeled with the 2^n bit strings of length n . The unusual choice of names for the vertices is made so it will be easy to describe the edges in the graph: two vertices are adjacent only if their labels differ in exactly one bit. Except for $n = 1, 2, 3$ it is not easy to draw a convincing diagram of Q_n . The graph Q_3 can be drawn so it looks like what you would probably draw if you wanted a picture of a 3-dimensional cube. In the graph below, there is a vertex placed at each of the eight corners of the 3-cube labeled with the name of the vertex.

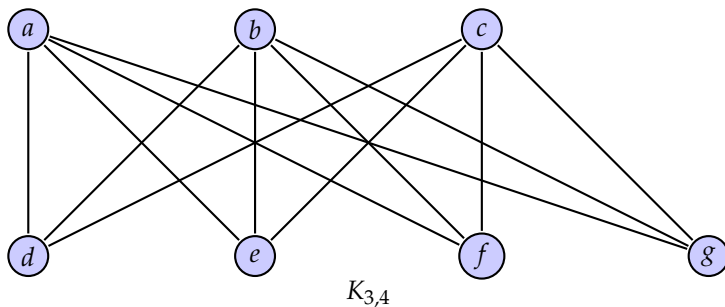


A graph is **bipartite** if it is possible to split the vertices into two subsets, let's call them T and B for top and bottom, so that all the edges go from a vertex in one of the subsets to a vertex in the other subset.

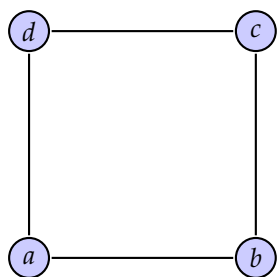
For example, the graph below is a bipartite graph with $T = \{a, b, c\}$ and $B = \{d, e, f, g\}$.



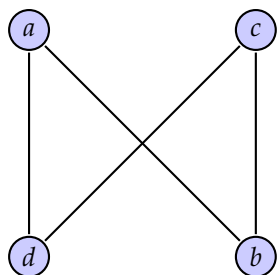
If T has m vertices and B has n vertices, and every vertex in T is adjacent to every vertex in B , the graph is called the **complete bipartite graph**, and it is denoted by $K_{m,n}$. Here is the graph $K_{3,4}$:



It is not always obvious if a graph is bipartite or not when looking at a diagram. For example the square



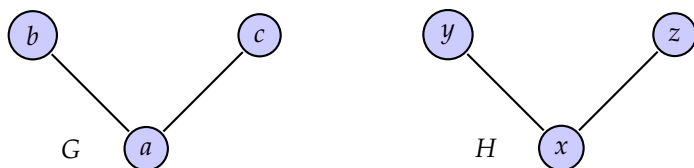
is bipartite since the graph can be redrawn as



so we can see the graph is actually $K_{2,2}$ in disguise.

38.5 Graph isomorphisms

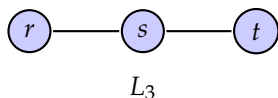
The graphs G and H are obviously really the same except for the labels used for the vertices.



This idea of *sameness* (the official phrase is the graphs G and H are **isomorphic**) for graphs is defined as follows: Two graphs G and H are isomorphic provided we can relabel the vertices of one of the graphs using the labels of the other graph in such a way that the two graphs will have exactly the same edges. As you can probably guess, the notion of isomorphic graphs is an equivalence relation on the collection of all graphs.

In the example above, if the vertices of H are relabeled as $a \rightarrow x$ (meaning replace x with a), and $b \rightarrow y, c \rightarrow z$, then the graph H will have edges $\{a, b\}$ and $\{a, c\}$ just like the graph G . So we have proved G and H are isomorphic graphs. The set of replacement rules, $a \rightarrow x, b \rightarrow y, c \rightarrow z$, is called an **isomorphism**.

The graph G is also isomorphic to the 3-link L_3 :



In this case, an isomorphism is $a \rightarrow s, b \rightarrow r, c \rightarrow t$.

On the other hand, G is certainly not isomorphic to the 4-cycle, C_4 since that graph does not even have the same number of vertices

as G . Also G is not isomorphic to the 3-cycles, C_3 . In this case, the two graphs do have the same number of vertices, but not the same number of edges. For two graphs have a chance of being isomorphic, the two graphs must have the same number of vertices and the same number of edges. But **warning**: even if two graphs have the same number of vertices and the same number of edges, they need not be isomorphic. For example L_4 and $K_{1,3}$ are both graphs with 4 vertices and 3 edges, but they are not isomorphic. This is so since L_4 does not have a vertex of degree 3, but $K_{1,3}$ does.

Extending that idea: to have a chance of being isomorphic, two graphs will have to have the same degree sequences since they will end up with the same edges after relabeling. But even having the same degree sequences is not enough to conclude two graphs are isomorphic as the margin example shows. We can see those two graphs are not isomorphic since G has three vertices that form a triangle, but there are no triangles in H .

For graphs with a few vertices and a few edges, a little trial and error is typically enough to determine if the graphs are isomorphic. For more complicated graphs, it can be very difficult to determine if they are isomorphic or not. One of the big goals in theoretical computer science is the design of efficient algorithms to determine if two graphs are isomorphic.

Example 38.4. Let G be a 5-cycle on a, b, c, d, e drawn as a regular pentagon with vertices arranged clockwise, in order, at the corners. Let H have vertex set v, w, x, y, z and graphical presentation as a pentagram (five-pointed star), where the vertices of the graph are the ends of the points of the star, and are arranged clockwise, (see figure 38.2).

An isomorphism is $a \rightarrow v, b \rightarrow x, c \rightarrow z, d \rightarrow w, e \rightarrow y$.

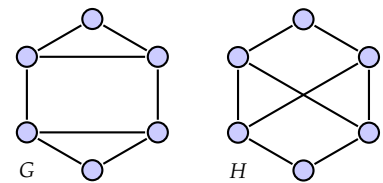


Figure 38.1: Nonisomorphic graphs with the same degree sequences.

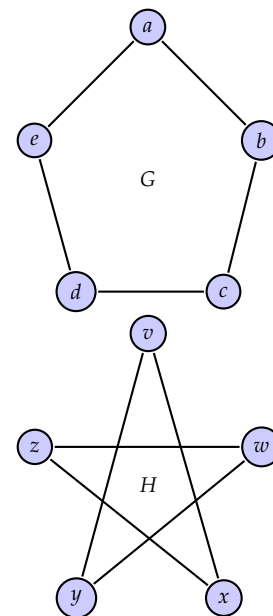


Figure 38.2: Isomorphic graphs

Example 38.5. The two graphs in figure 38.3 are isomorphic as shown by using the relabeling

$$u_1 \rightarrow v_1, u_2 \rightarrow v_2, u_3 \rightarrow v_3, u_4 \rightarrow v_4, u_5 \rightarrow v_9,$$

$$u_6 \rightarrow v_{10}, u_7 \rightarrow v_5, u_8 \rightarrow v_7, u_9 \rightarrow v_8, u_{10} \rightarrow v_6.$$

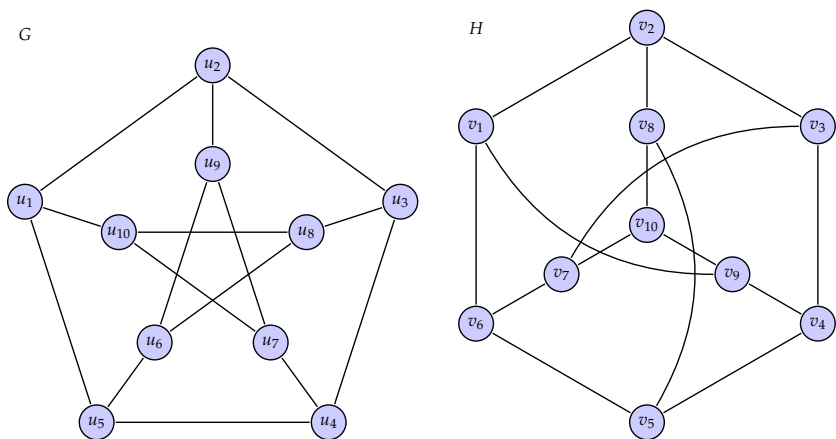


Figure 38.3: More Isomorphic graphs

The graph G is the traditional presentation of the **Petersen Graph**. It could be described as the graph whose vertex set is labeled with all the two element subsets of a five element set, with an edge joining two vertices if their labels have exactly one element in common.

38.6 Walks

The origins of graph theory had to do with bridges, and possible routes crossing the bridges. In this section we will consider that sort of question in graphs in general. We will think of walking along edges and visiting vertices. Remember that we do not allow multiple edges or loops in our graphs.

We begin with a collection of definitions. Warning: These terms are used differently in different texts. If you look at another graph theory text, be sure to see how the terms are used there.

A **walk** of **length** n in a graph is a sequence of $n + 1$ vertices $v_0, v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n$, where each vertex in the list is adjacent to the fol-

lowing vertex. Repeated vertices and repeated edges in a walk are allowed. The vertices v_0 and v_n are the **endpoints** of the walk. Think of starting at v_0 , walking along the edges, and ending up at v_n . The length n of the walk is the number of edges transversed in the walk. A **path** is a walk that does not visit any vertex more than once and uses no edges more than once. A walk in which the endpoints are the same is called **closed**. A **circuit** is a closed walk with no repeated edges. In plain English, a circuit in a graph is a route through a graph from a vertex back to itself through adjacent vertices without transversing any edge more than once. Finally, a **cycle** is a circuit in which no vertex besides the start vertex is repeated. Just to cover a trivial case, a single vertex, v , is a length 0 walk.

Here is an example illustrating these definitions.

Example 38.6. In the graph shown in figure 38.4, a, b, e, c, c is a walk of length 5. That is an example of an a, c -walk, meaning it starts at vertex a and ends at vertex c . That walk is also not a path since the vertex c is repeated. The b, e -walk b, c, f, e, d, a, e is not a path since the vertex e is repeated. The walk a, b, c, f, e is an a, e -path. Here are two circuits in that graph: a, b, e, d, a and a, b, c, e, d, a .

A graph is **connected** if there is a walk between any two vertices. In plain English, a connected graph consists of a single piece. The individual connected pieces of a graph are called its **connected components**. The length of the shortest walk between two vertices in a connect component of a graph is called the **distance** between the vertices. In figure 38.4, the distance between a and f is 2.

Theorem 38.7. In a connected graph there is a path between any two vertices. In other words, if there is a way to get from any vertex to any other vertex, then there is a way to get between any two vertices without repeating any vertex.

Proof. Exercise 38.4. The idea is simple: in a walk with a repeated vertex, just eliminate the side trip made between the two occurrences of that vertex from the walk. Do that until all the repeated vertices are eliminated. For example, in the graph shown in figure 38.4, The a, c -walk a, e, b, e, c can be reduced to the path a, e, c , eliminating the side trip to b . ♣

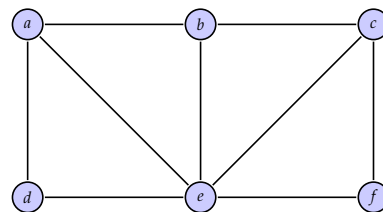


Figure 38.4: Walks, trails, and paths

A vertex in a graph is a **cutvertex**, if removal of the vertex and edges incident to it results in a graph with more connected components. Similarly a **bridge** is an edge whose removal (keeping the vertices it is incident to) yields a graph with more connected components.

We close this section with a discussion of two special types of walks.

38.6.1 Eulerian trails and circuits

An **eulerian trail** in a graph is a walk which uses every edge of the graph exactly once. An **eulerian circuit** is a circuit in a graph that uses every edge of the graph. A graph is called **eulerian** if it has an eulerian circuit. An interesting property of an eulerian graph is that it can be drawn completely without lifting pencil from paper and without retracing any edges.

Example 38.8. *The graph C_5 is an eulerian graph. In fact, the graph itself is an eulerian circuit.*

Example 38.9. *The graph K_5 is an eulerian graph.*

Example 38.10. *The graph L_n is itself an eulerian trail, but does not have an Eulerian circuit.*

Example 38.11. *The graph K_4 is not an eulerian graph.*¹

¹ Try it!

38.6.2 Hamiltonian cycles

A **hamiltonian cycle** in a graph is a cycle that visits every vertex in the graph. In other words, it is a walk through the graph from an initial vertex, visiting every vertex once, and then having a final step back to the initial vertex. A graph is **hamiltonian** if it has a hamiltonian cycle.

Example 38.12. *K_n is hamiltonian for $n \geq 3$.*

Example 38.13. *W_n has a hamiltonian cycle for $n \geq 3$.*

Example 38.14. *L_n has no hamiltonian cycle for $n \geq 2$*

38.6.3 *Some facts about eulerian and hamiltonian graphs*

A few easy observation: if G is a graph with either an eulerian circuit or hamiltonian cycle, then

- (1) G is connected.
- (2) every vertex has degree at least 2.
- (3) G has no bridges.

If G has a hamiltonian cycle, then G has no cutvertices.

Leonhard Euler gave a simple way to determine exactly when a graph is eulerian. On the other hand, despite considerable effort, no one has been able to devise a test to distinguish between hamiltonian and nonhamiltonian graphs that is much better than a brute force trial-and-error search for a hamiltonian cycle.

Theorem 38.15. *A connected graph is eulerian if and only if every vertex has even degree.*

Proof. *Let G be an eulerian graph, and suppose that v is a vertex in G with odd degree, say $2m + 1$. Let i denote the number of times an eulerian circuit passes through v . Since every edge is used exactly once in the circuit, and each time v is visited two different edges are used, we have $2i = 2m + 1$, which is impossible. $\rightarrow\leftarrow$. So G cannot have any vertices of odd degree.*

Conversely, let G be a connected graph where every vertex has even degree. Select a vertex u and build a trail starting at u as long as possible: each time we visit a vertex we select an unused edge leaving that vertex to extend the trail. For any vertex $v \neq u$ we visit, its even degree guarantees there will be an unused edge out, since each time v is visited used two edges incident to v and one more edge to arrive at v , for a total of an odd number of edges incident to v , and the vertex has even degree, so there must be at least one unused edge leading out of v . Since the process of extending the trail must eventually come to an end, that shows the end must be at u when the trail cannot be extended, and so we have constructed an eulerian circuit. e must reach a vertex where the trail cannot be extended. This vertex must be u by the preceding remark.

If this trail contains every edge we are done. Otherwise when these edges are removed from G we obtain a set of connected components H_1, \dots, H_m

which are subgraphs of G and which each satisfy that all vertices have even degree. Since their sizes are smaller, we may inductively construct an eulerian circuit for each H_i . Since each G is connected, each H_i contains a vertex of the initial circuit, say v_j . If we call the eulerian circuit of H_i , C_i , then $v_0, \dots, v_j, C_i, v_j, \dots, v_n, v_0$ is a circuit in G . Since the H_i are disjoint, we may insert each eulerian partial circuit thus obtaining an eulerian circuit for G . ♣

As a corollary we have

Theorem 38.16. *A connected graph has an eulerian trail using every edge, if and only if it has exactly two vertices of odd degree.*

The following theorem is an example of a sufficient (but not necessary) condition for a graph to have a hamiltonian cycle.

Theorem 38.17. *Let G be a connected graph with $n \geq 3$ vertices. If $\deg(v) \geq n/2$ for every vertex v , then G is hamiltonian.*

Proof. Suppose that the theorem is false. Let G be a connected graph with $\deg(v) \geq n/2$ for every vertex v . Moreover suppose that of all counterexamples on n vertices, G is a graph with the largest possible number of edges.

G is not complete, since K_n has a hamiltonian cycle, for $n \geq 3$. Therefore G has two nonadjacent vertices v_1 and v_n . By maximality the graph G_1 formed by adding the edge $\{v_1, v_n\}$ to G has a hamiltonian cycle. Moreover this cycle uses the edge $\{v_1, v_n\}$, since otherwise G has a hamiltonian cycle. So we may suppose that the hamiltonian cycle in G_1 is of the form $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n, v_1$. Thus v_1, \dots, v_n is a path in G .

Let $k = \deg(v_1)$. If v_{i+1} is adjacent to v_1 , then v_i cannot be adjacent to v_n , since otherwise $v_1, \dots, v_i, v_n, v_{n-1}, \dots, v_{i+1}, v_1$ is a hamiltonian cycle in G . Therefore, we have the contradiction

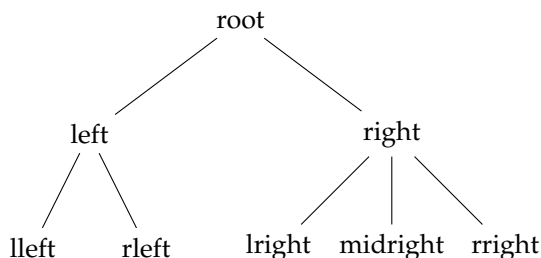
$$\deg(v_n) \leq (n - 1) - k \leq n - 1 - n/2 = n/2 - 1. \text{---}$$

♣

WARNING: Do not read too much into this theorem. The condition is not a necessary condition. The 5-cycle, C_5 , is obviously hamiltonian, but the vertices all have degree 2 which is less than $\frac{5}{2}$.

38.7 Trees

Trees form an important class of graphs. A **tree** is a connected graph with no cycles. Trees are traditionally drawn *upside down*, with the tree growing down rather than up, starting at a root vertex.



Theorem 38.18. *A graph G is a tree if and only if there is a unique path between any two vertices.*

Proof. *Suppose that G is a tree, and let u and v be two vertices of G . Since G is connected, there is a path of the form $u = v_0, v_1, \dots, v_n = v$. If there is a different path from u to v , say $u = w_0, w_1, \dots, w_n = v$ let i be the smallest subscript so that $w_i = v_i$, but $v_{i+1} \neq w_{i+1}$. Also let j be the next smallest subscript where $v_j = w_j$. By construction $v_i, v_{i+1}, \dots, v_j, w_{j-1}, w_{j-2}, \dots, w_i$ is a cycle in G \rightarrow .*

Conversely, if G is a graph where there is a unique path between any pair of vertices, then by definition G is connected. If G contained a cycle, C , then any two vertices of C would be joined by two distinct paths. \rightarrow Therefore G contains no cycles, and is a tree. \clubsuit

A consequence of theorem 38.18 is that given any vertex r in a tree, we can draw the tree with r at the top, as the root vertex, and the other vertices in levels below. ² The neighbors of r that appear at the first level below r are called r 's **children**. The children of r 's children are put in the second level below r , and are r 's **grandchildren**. In general the i th level consists of those vertices in the tree which are at distance i from r . The result is called a **rooted tree**. The **height** of a rooted tree is the maximum level number.

Naturally, besides child and parent, many genealogical terms apply to rooted trees, and are suggestive of the structure. For example if a rooted tree has root r , and $v \neq r$, the **ancestors** of v are all vertices

² Redraw the tree diagram above with vertex midright as the root vertex.

on the path from r to v , including r , but excluding v . The **descendants** of a vertex, w consist of all vertices which have w as one of their ancestors. The **subtree rooted at** w is the rooted tree consisting of w , its descendants, and all the required edges. A vertex with no children is a **leaf**, and a vertex with at least one child is called an **internal vertex**.

To distinguish rooted trees by breadth, we use the term **m -ary** to mean that any internal vertex has at most m children. An m -ary tree is **full** if every internal vertex has exactly m children. When $m = 2$, we use the term **binary**.

Theorem 38.19. *A tree on n vertices has $n - 1$ edges.*

Proof. *(by induction on n .)*

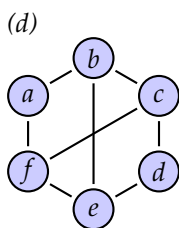
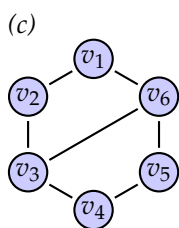
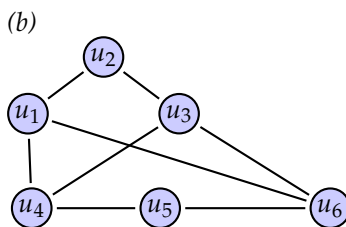
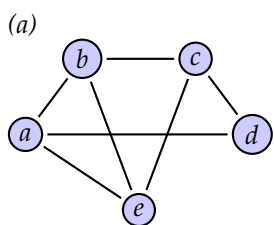
Basis: Let $n = 1$, this is the trivial tree with 0 edges. So true the theorem is true for $n = 1$.

Inductive Step: Suppose that for some $n \geq 1$ every tree with n vertices has $n - 1$ edges. Now suppose T is a tree with $n + 1$ vertices. Let v be a leaf of T . If we erase v and the edge leading to it, we are left with a tree with n vertices. By the inductive hypothesis, this new tree will have $n - 1$ edges. Since it has one less edge than the original tree, we conclude T has n edges.



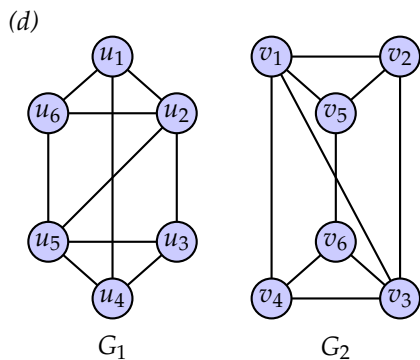
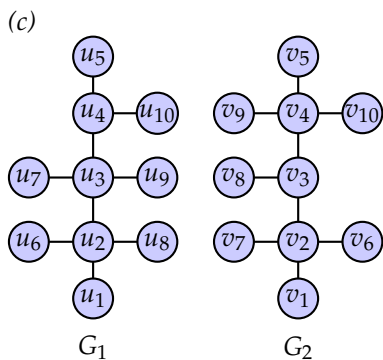
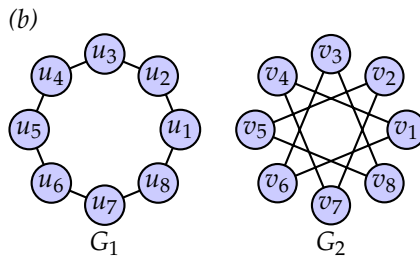
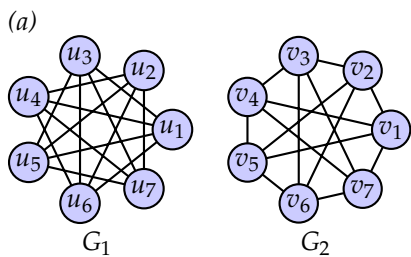
38.8 Exercises

Exercise 38.1. Determine whether each graph is bipartite. If it is, redraw it as a bipartite graph.



Exercise 38.2. For which values of n is C_n bipartite? Q_n ?

Exercise 38.3. For each pair of graphs either prove that G_1 and G_2 are not isomorphic, or else show they are isomorphic by exhibiting a graph isomorphism.

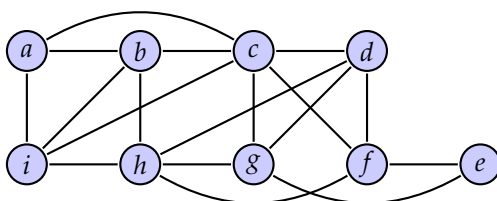


Exercise 38.4. Prove theorem 38.7 from section 38.6 on walks: If G is a connected graph, then there is a path between any two different vertices.

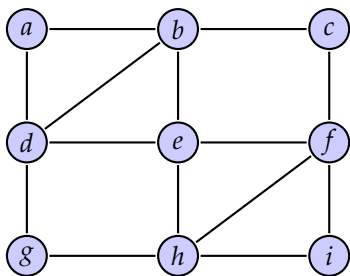
Exercise 38.5. For each graph below (i) find an eulerian circuit, or prove that none exists, and (ii) find a hamiltonian cycle or prove that none exists.

(a) The 3-cube Q_3 .

(b)



(c)



(d) The Petersen Graph. (See figure 38.3.)

Exercise 38.6. Answer the following questions about the rooted tree shown in figure 38.5 on page 318.

- (a) Which vertex is the root?
- (b) Which vertices are internal?
- (c) Which vertices are leaves?
- (d) Which vertices are children of b ?
- (e) Which vertices are grandchildren of b ?
- (f) Which vertex is the parent of m ?
- (g) Which vertices are siblings of q ?
- (h) Which vertices are ancestors of p ?
- (i) Which vertices are descendants of d ?
- (j) What level is i at?

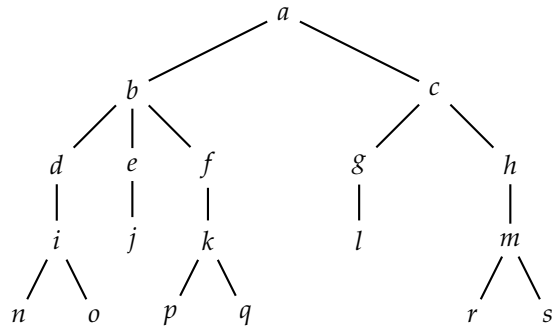


Figure 38.5: Tree for exercise 38.6

A

Answers

1.1.

- a) yes b) no, c) no,
d) yes, e) yes (may be arguable)

1.3.

- a) $(1101\ 0111 \oplus 1110\ 0010) \wedge 1100\ 1000 = (0011\ 0101) \wedge 1100\ 1000 = 0000\ 0000$
b) $(1111\ 1010 \wedge 0111\ 0010) \vee (0101\ 0001) = (0111\ 0010) \vee (0101\ 0001) = 0111\ 0011$
c) $(1001\ 0010 \vee 0101\ 1101) \wedge (0110\ 0010 \vee 0111\ 0101) = (1101\ 1111) \wedge (0111\ 0111) = 0101\ 0111$

1.5.

- a) Jordan did not play and the Wizards won.
b) If Jordan played, then the Wizards lost.
c) The Wizards won or Jordan played.
d) Jordan didn't play when the Wizards won. OR If the Wizards won, then Jordan did not play.

B

GNU Free Documentation License

Version 1.3, 3 November 2008

Copyright © 2000, 2001, 2002, 2007, 2008 Free Software Foundation,
Inc.

[<http://fsf.org/>](http://fsf.org/)

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

Preamble

The purpose of this License is to make a manual, textbook, or other functional and useful document “free” in the sense of freedom: to assure everyone the effective freedom to copy and redistribute it, with or without modifying it, either commercially or noncommercially. Secondly, this License preserves for the author and publisher a way to get credit for their work, while not being considered responsible for modifications made by others.

This License is a kind of “copyleft”, which means that derivative works of the document must themselves be free in the same sense. It complements the GNU General Public License, which is a copyleft license designed for free software.

We have designed this License in order to use it for manuals for free software, because free software needs free documentation: a free program should come with manuals providing the same freedoms that the software does. But this License is not limited to software

manuals; it can be used for any textual work, regardless of subject matter or whether it is published as a printed book. We recommend this License principally for works whose purpose is instruction or reference.

1. APPLICABILITY AND DEFINITIONS

This License applies to any manual or other work, in any medium, that contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it can be distributed under the terms of this License. Such a notice grants a world-wide, royalty-free license, unlimited in duration, to use that work under the conditions stated herein. The “**Document**”, below, refers to any such manual or work. Any member of the public is a licensee, and is addressed as “**you**”. You accept the license if you copy, modify or distribute the work in a way requiring permission under copyright law.

A “**Modified Version**” of the Document means any work containing the Document or a portion of it, either copied verbatim, or with modifications and/or translated into another language.

A “**Secondary Section**” is a named appendix or a front-matter section of the Document that deals exclusively with the relationship of the publishers or authors of the Document to the Document’s overall subject (or to related matters) and contains nothing that could fall directly within that overall subject. (Thus, if the Document is in part a textbook of mathematics, a Secondary Section may not explain any mathematics.) The relationship could be a matter of historical connection with the subject or with related matters, or of legal, commercial, philosophical, ethical or political position regarding them.

The “**Invariant Sections**” are certain Secondary Sections whose titles are designated, as being those of Invariant Sections, in the notice that says that the Document is released under this License. If a section does not fit the above definition of Secondary then it is not allowed to be designated as Invariant. The Document may contain zero Invariant Sections. If the Document does not identify any Invariant Sections then there are none.

The “**Cover Texts**” are certain short passages of text that are listed,

as Front-Cover Texts or Back-Cover Texts, in the notice that says that the Document is released under this License. A Front-Cover Text may be at most 5 words, and a Back-Cover Text may be at most 25 words.

A “**Transparent**” copy of the Document means a machine-readable copy, represented in a format whose specification is available to the general public, that is suitable for revising the document straightforwardly with generic text editors or (for images composed of pixels) generic paint programs or (for drawings) some widely available drawing editor, and that is suitable for input to text formatters or for automatic translation to a variety of formats suitable for input to text formatters. A copy made in an otherwise Transparent file format whose markup, or absence of markup, has been arranged to thwart or discourage subsequent modification by readers is not Transparent. An image format is not Transparent if used for any substantial amount of text. A copy that is not “Transparent” is called “**Opaque**”.

Examples of suitable formats for Transparent copies include plain ASCII without markup, Texinfo input format, LaTeX input format, SGML or XML using a publicly available DTD, and standard-conforming simple HTML, PostScript or PDF designed for human modification. Examples of transparent image formats include PNG, XCF and JPG. Opaque formats include proprietary formats that can be read and edited only by proprietary word processors, SGML or XML for which the DTD and/or processing tools are not generally available, and the machine-generated HTML, PostScript or PDF produced by some word processors for output purposes only.

The “**Title Page**” means, for a printed book, the title page itself, plus such following pages as are needed to hold, legibly, the material this License requires to appear in the title page. For works in formats which do not have any title page as such, “Title Page” means the text near the most prominent appearance of the work’s title, preceding the beginning of the body of the text.

The “**publisher**” means any person or entity that distributes copies of the Document to the public.

A section “**Entitled XYZ**” means a named subunit of the Document whose title either is precisely XYZ or contains XYZ in parenthe-

ses following text that translates XYZ in another language. (Here XYZ stands for a specific section name mentioned below, such as “**Acknowledgements**”, “**Dedications**”, “**Endorsements**”, or “**History**”). To “**Preserve the Title**” of such a section when you modify the Document means that it remains a section “Entitled XYZ” according to this definition.

The Document may include Warranty Disclaimers next to the notice which states that this License applies to the Document. These Warranty Disclaimers are considered to be included by reference in this License, but only as regards disclaiming warranties: any other implication that these Warranty Disclaimers may have is void and has no effect on the meaning of this License.

2. VERBATIM COPYING

You may copy and distribute the Document in any medium, either commercially or noncommercially, provided that this License, the copyright notices, and the license notice saying this License applies to the Document are reproduced in all copies, and that you add no other conditions whatsoever to those of this License. You may not use technical measures to obstruct or control the reading or further copying of the copies you make or distribute. However, you may accept compensation in exchange for copies. If you distribute a large enough number of copies you must also follow the conditions in section 3.

You may also lend copies, under the same conditions stated above, and you may publicly display copies.

3. COPYING IN QUANTITY

If you publish printed copies (or copies in media that commonly have printed covers) of the Document, numbering more than 100, and the Document’s license notice requires Cover Texts, you must enclose the copies in covers that carry, clearly and legibly, all these Cover Texts: Front-Cover Texts on the front cover, and Back-Cover Texts on the back cover. Both covers must also clearly and legibly identify you as the publisher of these copies. The front cover must present

the full title with all words of the title equally prominent and visible. You may add other material on the covers in addition. Copying with changes limited to the covers, as long as they preserve the title of the Document and satisfy these conditions, can be treated as verbatim copying in other respects.

If the required texts for either cover are too voluminous to fit legibly, you should put the first ones listed (as many as fit reasonably) on the actual cover, and continue the rest onto adjacent pages.

If you publish or distribute Opaque copies of the Document numbering more than 100, you must either include a machine-readable Transparent copy along with each Opaque copy, or state in or with each Opaque copy a computer-network location from which the general network-using public has access to download using public-standard network protocols a complete Transparent copy of the Document, free of added material. If you use the latter option, you must take reasonably prudent steps, when you begin distribution of Opaque copies in quantity, to ensure that this Transparent copy will remain thus accessible at the stated location until at least one year after the last time you distribute an Opaque copy (directly or through your agents or retailers) of that edition to the public.

It is requested, but not required, that you contact the authors of the Document well before redistributing any large number of copies, to give them a chance to provide you with an updated version of the Document.

4. MODIFICATIONS

You may copy and distribute a Modified Version of the Document under the conditions of sections 2 and 3 above, provided that you release the Modified Version under precisely this License, with the Modified Version filling the role of the Document, thus licensing distribution and modification of the Modified Version to whoever possesses a copy of it. In addition, you must do these things in the Modified Version:

- A. Use in the Title Page (and on the covers, if any) a title distinct from that of the Document, and from those of previous versions (which

should, if there were any, be listed in the History section of the Document). You may use the same title as a previous version if the original publisher of that version gives permission.

- B. List on the Title Page, as authors, one or more persons or entities responsible for authorship of the modifications in the Modified Version, together with at least five of the principal authors of the Document (all of its principal authors, if it has fewer than five), unless they release you from this requirement.
- C. State on the Title page the name of the publisher of the Modified Version, as the publisher.
- D. Preserve all the copyright notices of the Document.
- E. Add an appropriate copyright notice for your modifications adjacent to the other copyright notices.
- F. Include, immediately after the copyright notices, a license notice giving the public permission to use the Modified Version under the terms of this License, in the form shown in the Addendum below.
- G. Preserve in that license notice the full lists of Invariant Sections and required Cover Texts given in the Document's license notice.
- H. Include an unaltered copy of this License.
- I. Preserve the section Entitled "History", Preserve its Title, and add to it an item stating at least the title, year, new authors, and publisher of the Modified Version as given on the Title Page. If there is no section Entitled "History" in the Document, create one stating the title, year, authors, and publisher of the Document as given on its Title Page, then add an item describing the Modified Version as stated in the previous sentence.
- J. Preserve the network location, if any, given in the Document for public access to a Transparent copy of the Document, and likewise the network locations given in the Document for previous versions it was based on. These may be placed in the "History" section.

You may omit a network location for a work that was published at least four years before the Document itself, or if the original publisher of the version it refers to gives permission.

- K. For any section Entitled “Acknowledgements” or “Dedications”, Preserve the Title of the section, and preserve in the section all the substance and tone of each of the contributor acknowledgements and/or dedications given therein.
- L. Preserve all the Invariant Sections of the Document, unaltered in their text and in their titles. Section numbers or the equivalent are not considered part of the section titles.
- M. Delete any section Entitled “Endorsements”. Such a section may not be included in the Modified Version.
- N. Do not retitle any existing section to be Entitled “Endorsements” or to conflict in title with any Invariant Section.
- O. Preserve any Warranty Disclaimers.

If the Modified Version includes new front-matter sections or appendices that qualify as Secondary Sections and contain no material copied from the Document, you may at your option designate some or all of these sections as invariant. To do this, add their titles to the list of Invariant Sections in the Modified Version’s license notice.

These titles must be distinct from any other section titles.

You may add a section Entitled “Endorsements”, provided it contains nothing but endorsements of your Modified Version by various parties—for example, statements of peer review or that the text has been approved by an organization as the authoritative definition of a standard.

You may add a passage of up to five words as a Front-Cover Text, and a passage of up to 25 words as a Back-Cover Text, to the end of the list of Cover Texts in the Modified Version. Only one passage of Front-Cover Text and one of Back-Cover Text may be added by (or through arrangements made by) any one entity. If the Document already includes a cover text for the same cover, previously added by you or by arrangement made by the same entity you are acting on

behalf of, you may not add another; but you may replace the old one, on explicit permission from the previous publisher that added the old one.

The author(s) and publisher(s) of the Document do not by this License give permission to use their names for publicity for or to assert or imply endorsement of any Modified Version.

5. COMBINING DOCUMENTS

You may combine the Document with other documents released under this License, under the terms defined in section 4 above for modified versions, provided that you include in the combination all of the Invariant Sections of all of the original documents, unmodified, and list them all as Invariant Sections of your combined work in its license notice, and that you preserve all their Warranty Disclaimers.

The combined work need only contain one copy of this License, and multiple identical Invariant Sections may be replaced with a single copy. If there are multiple Invariant Sections with the same name but different contents, make the title of each such section unique by adding at the end of it, in parentheses, the name of the original author or publisher of that section if known, or else a unique number. Make the same adjustment to the section titles in the list of Invariant Sections in the license notice of the combined work.

In the combination, you must combine any sections Entitled “History” in the various original documents, forming one section Entitled “History”; likewise combine any sections Entitled “Acknowledgements”, and any sections Entitled “Dedications”. You must delete all sections Entitled “Endorsements”.

6. COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS

You may make a collection consisting of the Document and other documents released under this License, and replace the individual copies of this License in the various documents with a single copy that is included in the collection, provided that you follow the rules of this License for verbatim copying of each of the documents in all other respects.

You may extract a single document from such a collection, and distribute it individually under this License, provided you insert a copy of this License into the extracted document, and follow this License in all other respects regarding verbatim copying of that document.

7. AGGREGATION WITH INDEPENDENT WORKS

A compilation of the Document or its derivatives with other separate and independent documents or works, in or on a volume of a storage or distribution medium, is called an “aggregate” if the copyright resulting from the compilation is not used to limit the legal rights of the compilation’s users beyond what the individual works permit. When the Document is included in an aggregate, this License does not apply to the other works in the aggregate which are not themselves derivative works of the Document.

If the Cover Text requirement of section 3 is applicable to these copies of the Document, then if the Document is less than one half of the entire aggregate, the Document’s Cover Texts may be placed on covers that bracket the Document within the aggregate, or the electronic equivalent of covers if the Document is in electronic form. Otherwise they must appear on printed covers that bracket the whole aggregate.

8. TRANSLATION

Translation is considered a kind of modification, so you may distribute translations of the Document under the terms of section 4. Replacing Invariant Sections with translations requires special permission from their copyright holders, but you may include translations of some or all Invariant Sections in addition to the original versions of these Invariant Sections. You may include a translation of this License, and all the license notices in the Document, and any Warranty Disclaimers, provided that you also include the original English version of this License and the original versions of those notices and disclaimers. In case of a disagreement between the translation and the original version of this License or a notice or disclaimer, the original version will prevail.

If a section in the Document is Entitled “Acknowledgements”, “Dedications”, or “History”, the requirement (section 4) to Preserve its Title (section 1) will typically require changing the actual title.

9. TERMINATION

You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Document except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute it is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License.

However, if you cease all violation of this License, then your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated (a) provisionally, unless and until the copyright holder explicitly and finally terminates your license, and (b) permanently, if the copyright holder fails to notify you of the violation by some reasonable means prior to 60 days after the cessation.

Moreover, your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated permanently if the copyright holder notifies you of the violation by some reasonable means, this is the first time you have received notice of violation of this License (for any work) from that copyright holder, and you cure the violation prior to 30 days after your receipt of the notice.

Termination of your rights under this section does not terminate the licenses of parties who have received copies or rights from you under this License. If your rights have been terminated and not permanently reinstated, receipt of a copy of some or all of the same material does not give you any rights to use it.

10. FUTURE REVISIONS OF THIS LICENSE

The Free Software Foundation may publish new, revised versions of the GNU Free Documentation License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version of the License is given a distinguishing version number. If the Document specifies that a particular numbered version of this License “or any later version” applies to it, you have the option

See <http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/>.

of following the terms and conditions either of that specified version or of any later version that has been published (not as a draft) by the Free Software Foundation. If the Document does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published (not as a draft) by the Free Software Foundation. If the Document specifies that a proxy can decide which future versions of this License can be used, that proxy's public statement of acceptance of a version permanently authorizes you to choose that version for the Document.

11. RELICENSING

“Massive Multiauthor Collaboration Site” (or “MMC Site”) means any World Wide Web server that publishes copyrightable works and also provides prominent facilities for anybody to edit those works. A public wiki that anybody can edit is an example of such a server. A “Massive Multiauthor Collaboration” (or “MMC”) contained in the site means any set of copyrightable works thus published on the MMC site.

“CC-BY-SA” means the Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 license published by Creative Commons Corporation, a not-for-profit corporation with a principal place of business in San Francisco, California, as well as future copyleft versions of that license published by that same organization.

“Incorporate” means to publish or republish a Document, in whole or in part, as part of another Document.

An MMC is “eligible for relicensing” if it is licensed under this License, and if all works that were first published under this License somewhere other than this MMC, and subsequently incorporated in whole or in part into the MMC, (1) had no cover texts or invariant sections, and (2) were thus incorporated prior to November 1, 2008.

The operator of an MMC Site may republish an MMC contained in the site under CC-BY-SA on the same site at any time before August 1, 2009, provided the MMC is eligible for relicensing.

ADDENDUM: How to use this License for your documents

To use this License in a document you have written, include a copy of the License in the document and put the following copyright and license notices just after the title page:

Copyright © YEAR YOUR NAME. Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this document under the terms of the GNU Free Documentation License, Version 1.3 or any later version published by the Free Software Foundation; with no Invariant Sections, no Front-Cover Texts, and no Back-Cover Texts. A copy of the license is included in the section entitled “GNU Free Documentation License”.

If you have Invariant Sections, Front-Cover Texts and Back-Cover Texts, replace the “with ... Texts.” line with this:

with the Invariant Sections being LIST THEIR TITLES, with the Front-Cover Texts being LIST, and with the Back-Cover Texts being LIST.

If you have Invariant Sections without Cover Texts, or some other combination of the three, merge those two alternatives to suit the situation.

If your document contains nontrivial examples of program code, we recommend releasing these examples in parallel under your choice of free software license, such as the GNU General Public License, to permit their use in free software.